

SOCIAL SCIENCE

(For Class VIII)



GEOGRAPHY WRITER AND TRANSLATOR

Sh. Sharanjit Singh

SUBJECT CO-ORDINATOR

Raminderjit Singh Wasu
Subject Expert, P.S.Ed. Board

MAP WORK

S. Tejinder Singh, Lecturer
S.G.A.D. Govt. Sr. Sec.(G) School,
Tarn Taran

HISTORY WRITER

Sh.Malkiat Singh Mann

Miss Hardeep Kaur
Sh. Buta Singh Sekhon

TRANSLATOR
Miss Hardeep Kaur
Reviewed by : Baljinder Singh
S.S. Master G.S.S.S Kotbudha
Tarn Taran

SUBJECT CO-ORDINATOR
Seema Chawla,
Subject Expert (History), P.S.Ed. Board.

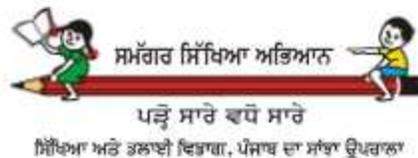
CIVICS

WRITER
Sh. Darshan Singh

TRANSLATOR
Smt. Avinderpal Kaur

EDITOR
1. Smt. Harminder Kaur, Lecturer
2. Sh.Gurmit Singh, Lecturer

ARTIST
Sh. Gurmail Singh



ਸਿੱਖਿਆ ਅਤੇ ਤਲਾਈ ਵਿਭਾਗ, ਪੰਜਾਬ ਦਾ ਸਾਂਝਾ ਉਪਰਾਲਾ

Punjab School Education Board
Sahibzada Ajit Singh Nagar

© Punjab Government

Edition 2023 29000 copies

All rights, including those of translation,
reproduction and annotation etc., are reserved by
the Punjab Government

WARNING

1. The Agency-holders shall not add any extra binding with a view to charge extra money for the binding. (Ref. Cl. No. 7 of agreement with Agency-holders).
2. Printing, Publishing, Stocking, Holding or Selling etc., of spurious Text-books qua text-books printed and published by the Punjab School Education Board is a cognizable offence under Indian Penal Code.

(The text-books of the Punjab School Education Board are Printed on Paper Carrying watermark of the Board.



ਸਿੱਖਿਆ ਅਤੇ ਭਲਾਈ ਵਿਭਾਗ, ਪੰਜਾਬ ਦਾ ਸਾਂਝਾ ਉਪਰਾਲਾ

Published by: Secretary, Punjab School Education Board, Vidya Bhawan, Phase-8, Sahibzada Ajit Singh Nagar - 160062 & Printed by : **M/s Swan Printing Press, Jalandhar.**

FOREWORD

The Punjab School Education Board has always been striving hard to prepare and revise the syllabi and textbooks in accordance with the latest Education Policy. This book of Social Science has been prepared on the basis of the recommendation put forward in National Curriculum Frame Work 2005 as per the directive of the Department of Human Resource Development, Govt. of India. In the light of guidelines given in PCF-2013 the content of this book has been revised again, subjectively, made more vibrant and student centric keeping in mind State specific needs. The main objective of the book is to bring the students of Punjab at par with the students at the national level. Therefore, keeping in view the above objective, the book in hand has been prepared for the students of class VIII. This book comprises of three areas of study namely (i) Resources and their Development (ii) Our Past III & (iii) Social and Political Life which encompasses the study of different subjects of social sciences i.e. Geography, History and Civics respectively.

This book has been prepared under the able guidance of Deputy Secretary (Academics), Although, the content of the book has been written by the experts from the field, yet, process of vetting has been carried out by the Subject-Experts and Project Officers working in the Board. The designs and maps in the book have been prepared by Sh. Gurmail Singh, Artist and S. Tejinder Singh.

Chairman

Punjab School Education Board

CONTENTS

S.No.	CHAPTER	PAGE NO.
<u>UNIT-I : RESOURCES AND THEIR DEVELOPMENT</u>		
1.	Resources - Types and Conservation	1-6
2.	Natural Resources	7-22
3.	Minerals and Energy Resources	23-41
4.	Our Agriculture	42-70
5.	Bank and Banking	71-80
6.	Disaster Management	81-95
<u>UNIT-II : OUR PAST-III</u>		
7.	When, Where & How	97-101
8.	The Establishment of East India Company	102-112
9.	Administrative Structure, Growth of Colonial Army and Civilian Administration	113-117
10.	Rural Life and Society	118-123
11.	Colonialism and Tribal Society	124-129
12.	Handicraft and Industry	130-134
13.	The Revolt of 1857 A.D.	135-144
14.	The Education and British Rule	145-154
15.	Women and Reforms	155-162
16.	Challenge to Caste System	163-169
17.	Colonialism and Urban Change	170-176
18.	The Changes in Arts, Painting, Literature and Architecture	177-184
19.	National Movement 1885-1919	185-192
20.	National Movement 1919-1947 A.D.	193-203
21.	India after Independence	204-213
<u>UNIT-III : SOCIAL AND POLITICAL LIFE</u>		
22.	Constitution and Law	215-220
23.	Importance and Principles of Secularism	221-226
24.	Fundamental Rights, Directive Principles and Fundamental Duties	227-231
25.	Parliament : Structure, Role and Importance	232-239
26.	Judiciary and its Special Jurisdiction	240-245
27.	Effects of Social Inequalities and Social Justice	246-253
28.	Introducing more Banking Activities	254-258

ABOUT THE BOOK

The book in hand on the subject of Social Science has been prepared for the students of class VIII. The book has been written as per the recommendations of National Curriculum Framework (NCF 2005). This book has been divided into three parts.

Unit-I (Resources and their development) is primarily concerned with the subject of Geography and includes the study of resources and their development. Our earth is a unique (important) planet of the Solar system which provides habitat to human life along with bountiful resources. This part includes the study of worldwide distribution of these resources in general and with special reference to India, its maintenance and economic importance. Another aspect is 'Human Resources' which holds pivotal position of all resources and without which other resources become meaningless, have also been included as a part of this study. A chapter on Disaster Management including Natural and Man made disasters and their mitigation have been added to this part of the book.

Unit-II (Our Past-III) which mainly deals with subject of History and included the study of the events happened in the past in a chronological sequence in order to develop an overview. The study will help the students to interpret major turning points in the past and enable them to organise determine the present and future.

Unit-III (Social and Political Life) which mainly is concerned with the subject of Civics and includes the study of social and political life of India. The theme of the study is to introduce the child to the government and understand the key elements in the functioning. It also aims to help the learners to comprehend the constitutional values and adopt these values in their life practically.

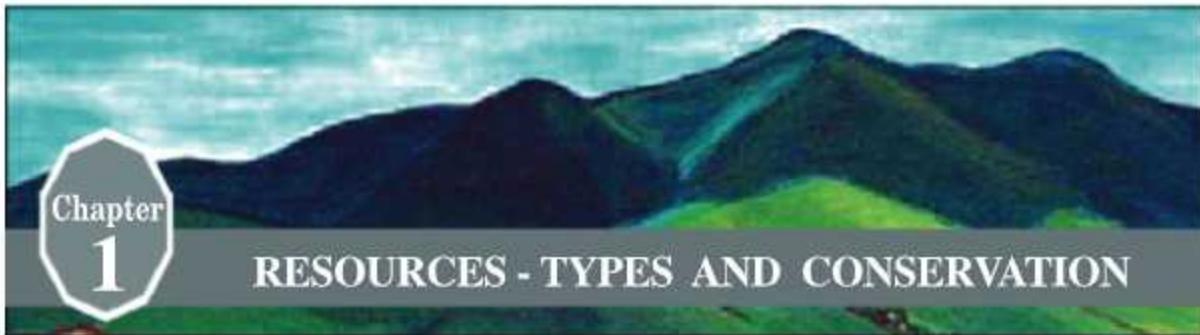
Co-ordinator, Social Sciences

PART-I

GEOGRAPHY

Resources and their development





The needs of man began with its origin. These needs were limited for food, shelter etc. only in the beginning but with the development of mankind its needs also grew. As it grew, the man started looking towards his surrounding for their fulfilment and the use of natural resources like soil, water, trees, stones etc. started. Man's increasing needs in today's world have gone limitless to the extent that he has to depend on various means. These means are called 'resources.' Therefore the natural or man-made meaningful substances which fulfil man's needs are known as 'resources.' These resources fulfil man's specific objectives. In other words the resources are such natural gifts which are very valuable for human beings.

The resources may be natural or man-made. The natural resources are provided to man by the nature e.g. forests, rivers, minerals, solar energy, seas etc. The important among man made resources are machinery, means of transportation, artificial fertilizers, human resources etc. Resources may be classified as physical or non-physical in nature. Human intelligence, knowledge and efficiency is termed as 'Human Resource.'

Resource is a changing concept which may expand or contract with the development of knowledge and technology. As coal or petroleum for the primitive man and aluminium before the invention of aeroplanes for the modern man had a little or no meaning. Therefore, we can say that the real development of the resources lies in its efficient utilization. The development of all the resources is dependent upon the development of the 'Human Resource.'

Resources - Types

Natural or man-made resources are of various types. On the bases of life, existence, availability, level of development of utilization these resources may be divided into the following types :

1. Biotic and biotic Resources
2. Developed and Potential Resources
3. Exhaustible and Inexhaustible Resources
4. Soil and Land Resources
5. Marine and Mineral Resources
6. Human Resources

1. Biotic and Abiotic Resources

Biotic resources are those basic resources which originate from living things. Approximately 85% of the world's total food requirement depends upon the biotic resources. Plants and other living creatures are included in this type of resources. These resources provide raw material for our industries. Coal and petroleum are also included in the category of biotic resources as they are produced from the plants and animals.

The non-living products like minerals, water etc., which are provided by the nature are called 'Abiotic Resources.' The minerals are the base of our industries. If we do not use the minerals with care, these will exhaust very soon.

2. Developed and Potential Resources

Normally the richness of any country may be judged from the resources it possesses. These resources may be available below or above the earth. For example the gold, silver, coal and petroleum are found beneath the crust of earth whereas water, forests, solar energy etc. are found over the earth. The resources which are used for some economic gains are termed as 'Developed resources.' On the other hand, the resources which are available but are not being used or can be used in the future as called 'Potential Resources.' The rivers descending the mountains can be used to produce electricity and are included in the category of potential resources. When the water of these rivers is used to produce electricity then this water is known as a developed resource. The coal lying underneath the crust of the earth is a potential resource where as the coal which is being used is considered as a developed resource.

3. Exhaustible and Inexhaustible Resources

The resources which are depleting very fast because of their continuous and excess use are called exhaustible resources, as petroleum products are being used very fast. The time is not very far when there will be shortage or non-existence of such resources. Therefore the exhaustible resources must be used wisely and carefully.

Inexhaustible Resources : The resources which get renewed as we use them, fall in this category For example : We are using solar energy, wind energy, water and forests but these resources do not get depleted, rather these may get renewed.

4. Soil and Land Resources

Soil is the small and uppermost layer of the earth which is formed by breaking of parent rock, due to effect of climate and decomposition of plants and animals. Soil is a very important resource for man. It plays an important role in the growth of plants and crops. These plants and crops are very significant for the human beings. Without plant life, the life of human beings is almost impossible. The soils are of different types like Sandy soil, Clayey soil, Loamy soil, Alluvial soil, Mountaineous soil, Red

soil, Black soil etc. Man gives preference to fertile soil for growing crops. The areas with fertile soil are densely populated and are full of economic activities.

Land means the earth surface where economic or other activities are carried out. Man had been using the land resource for a very long time. The land resource is being used for the purpose of agriculture, industry, to develop means of transport, sports, tourism etc. Man uses the land, keeping in view its relief, slope, type of soil, drainage and his requirements.

5. Marine and Mineral Resources

Marine resources : Water is a basic and very important resource for man. Approximately 71% part of the earth is covered by water. Big water bodies found on Earth are called 'seas.' These water bodies provide many biotic, mineral and energy resources. It is believed that the life on the earth started from the seas and oceans. Approximately 75% of the total land creatures originated from the water bodies. We get fish, pearls, shells, diamonds etc. from the seas in large quantities. At some places we get petroleum substances from the sea coasts. The fish provide food to the large part of the world's population.

Mineral Resources : Mineral resources are the substances which are taken out from the earth. Basically these are of two types Metallic and non-metallic minerals. Metallic minerals include iron, copper, silver, gold, aluminium etc.

Petroleum, Coal, Mica, Managanese etc are some of the non-metallic minerals. The minerals are taken out of different types of rocks. The minerals which we get from the rocks can not be used directly rather they are being refined before their use. The minerals are the bases for our industries therefore much significance is attached to them.

6. Human Resources

Man has been awarded the best status of all the creatures produced by the nature. With his intelligence and ability to work, man himself is the biggest resources. Man's capability plays an important role in the use of all other resources. Development of human resources is reflected from the development of any area. Japan is a very good example where, inspite of the deficiency or non-existence of resources, the country has progressed to a great extent. The development of all other resources is incomplete till the human resource is fully developed. Man's qualities, capacities, educational and technical qualifications etc. play an important role in the development of the resources. All the countries of world are engaged in the proper development of their human resources so that they are able to develop the other resources.

Conservation of Resources :

Resources are the gifts of nature to man. Man uses these resources for his development. In the race of development and to compete with other countries of the world, he is exhausting the resources continuously and unwisely. He is unaware and

reluctant of the fact that the reserves of some resources are limited and if exhausted once, will not be produced again. The resources like coal and petroleum which are non-renewable in nature if finished once, will not be produced again. Therefore there is need to conserve these types of resources.

Resources and their conservation are very closely related. From conservation, we mean the use of resources without its wastage and destruction. In other words these resources should be used for the proper development and for a long span of time so that the coming generations also enjoy the benefits of resources. The optimal use of resources is their conservation in real sense.

Conservation is essential for all the resources but for the exhaustible resources like minerals its becomes very imporetant. According to a survey, if fossil fuels like coal and petroleum are exhausted at the current rate then about 80% of the fossil fuels will be finished in one century. We should also conserve other resources like soil, water, forests etc. The resources should be used carefully so that the resources do not get wasted. The resources which can be used again, should be recycled. Rules should be framed regarding the utilisation of these resources. The level of knowledge, education and technology of the persons using the resources should be upgraded. The awareness regarding the conservation of resources should be conveyed among the people utilising it.

POINTS TO REMEMBER

- | | |
|---------------------|---|
| Resources | : Fulfil man's requirements.
Required for development. |
| Definition | : Natural or man-made meaningful substances which fulfil human needs. |
| Types | : Biotic and Abiotic
Developed and Potential
Exhaustible and Inexhaustible
Soil and Land
Marine and Mineral |
| Conservation | : The resources are very essential for the development.
: Some resources are exhaustible in nature.
: These should be used properly and for the long time. These should not be wasted or destroyed.
: There should be recycling of the substances which may be re-used.
: Laws should be made regarding the use of the resources.
: Knowledge, education and technological level of the people should be uplifted. |



I. Answer the following questions in 01-15 words :

1. Which are the natural resources and who provides us ?
2. List all the types of resources.
3. Define 'Soil.'
4. What do we get from the Oceans ?
5. How can you conserve the resources properly ?

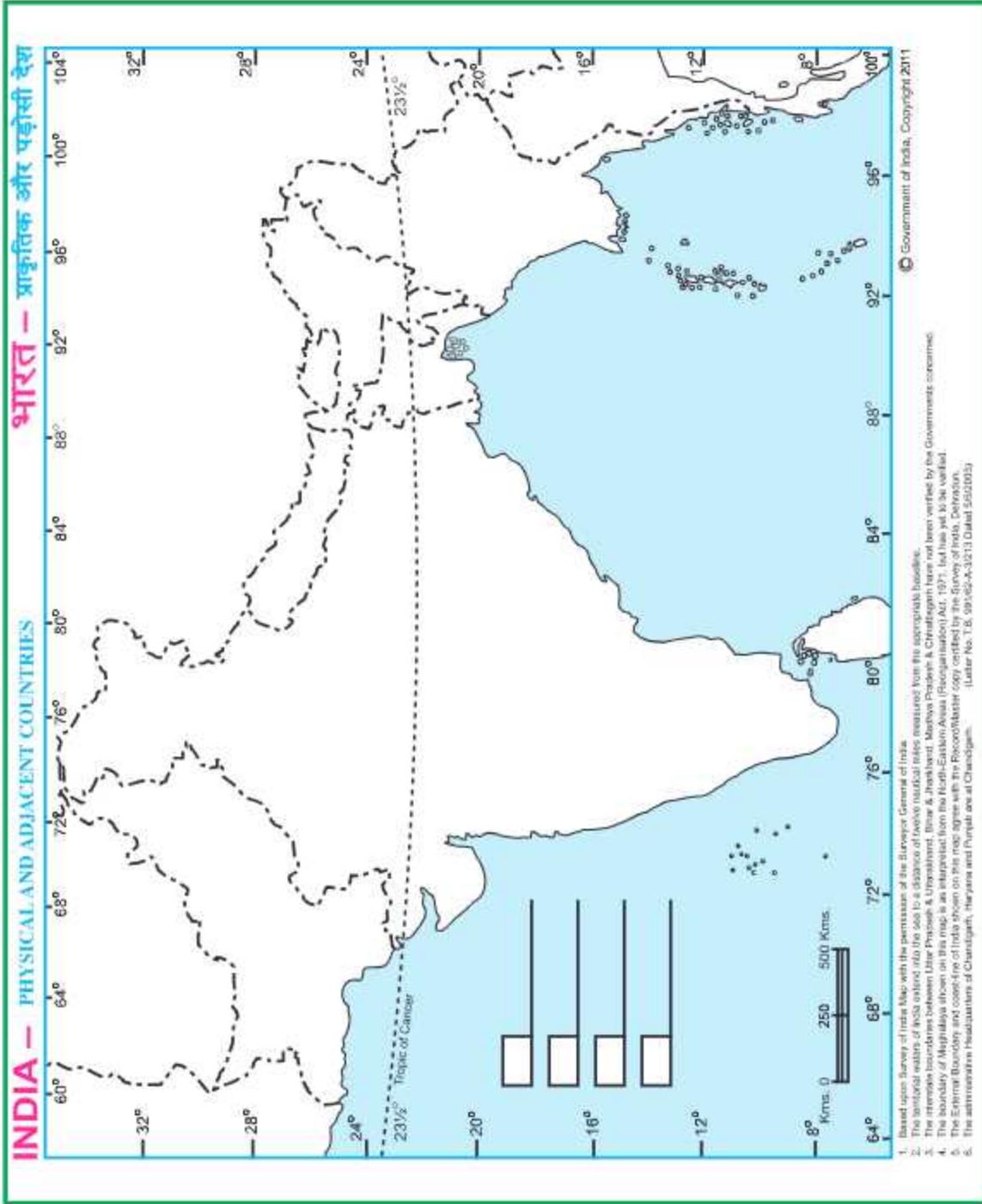
II. Answer the following questions in 50-60 words.

1. Differentiate between biotic and abiotic resources.
2. Write a short note on the importance of land and soil resources.
3. From where do we get the minerals and where are they used ?
4. Explain the developed and the potential resources with examples.
5. Why should we use the exhaustible resources wisely and with hesitation ?

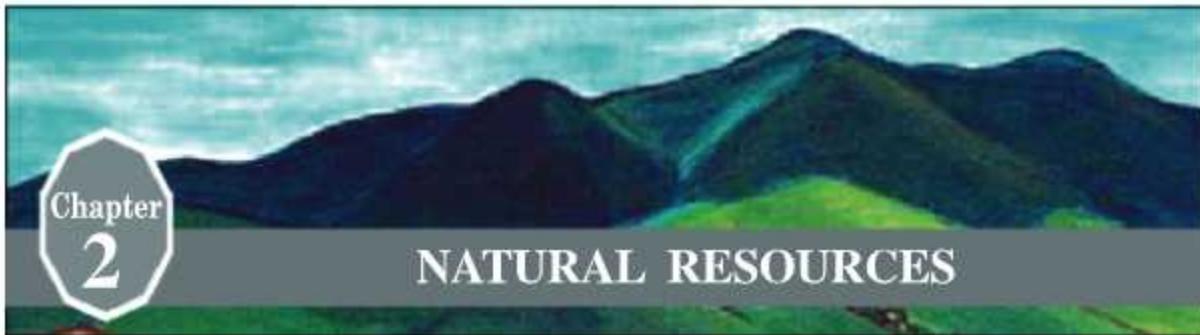
III. Activity

Make a list of hydro-electricity producing dams related to Punjab. Note down names of rivers on which these dams are situated and names of districts in which these dams are constructed.





Name Class Roll No. Teacher Signature



'Natural Resources' are the gifts of nature like land, water, soil, vegetation and minerals. These resources are called as 'Spinal chord' of the economy of any nation. These are considered as the base of strength and prosperity of nation. Here in this chapter we will study the natural resources under the following titles :-

- I. Land
- II. Soil
- III. Water
- IV. Natural Vegetation
- V. Wildlife
- VI. Mineral and Energy Resources

I. Land Resources

Man had been using land for his needs since its inception. The use of land has a special place in the life of man. He lives as well as carries on his other activities on this land. Man depends on land for the fulfilment of his different needs. He uses the land for his economic and cultural activities.

Approximately 29% part of the earth is land and the remaining 71% is water. This 29% part of the earth i.e. land is further divided into land forms like mountains, plateaus, plains etc. Man's economic activities differ with the different landforms. The mountainous regions of the world are not much suitable for human settlement. On the other hand very dense population is found in the plains because almost all the requirements of human habitation are found easily available over here.

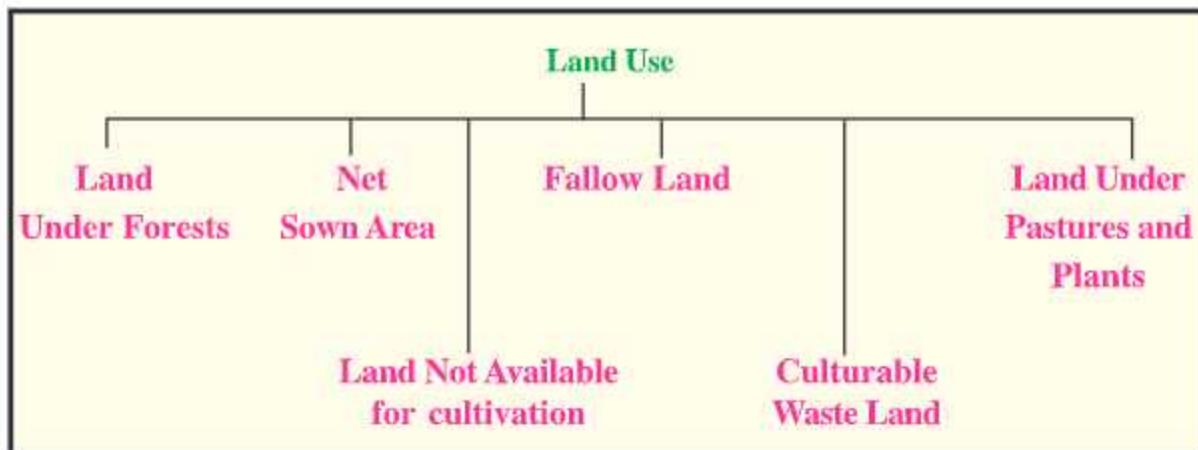
India is a large country. Its bigger size itself is an important resource. Its area is approximately 32, 87, 782 square kilometer. About 30% of the area of India comes under mountains. These mountains are also known as store houses of the resources. These are also significant as far as from the beauty point of view, of the country is concerned. The plateaus cover approximately 27% of the total area of the country. We also get various types of minerals from these plateaus. These are also used for agricultural purposes.

The plains are known for agriculture and dense population. Of the total land areas

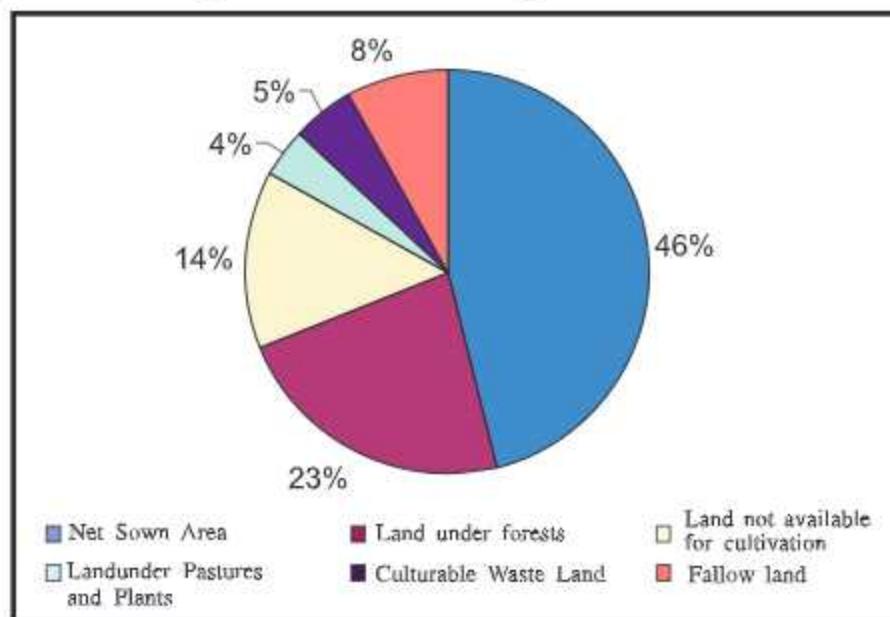
of the country. 43% area is covered by plains. These plains fulfil man's many needs. From the point of view of agriculture and vegetation the plains area is considered very valuable. Though the agriculture is affected by many other factors also yet 'land' plays a fundamental and important role.

Land-Use

The land is used in different ways. The use of land in India can be classified as given below :-

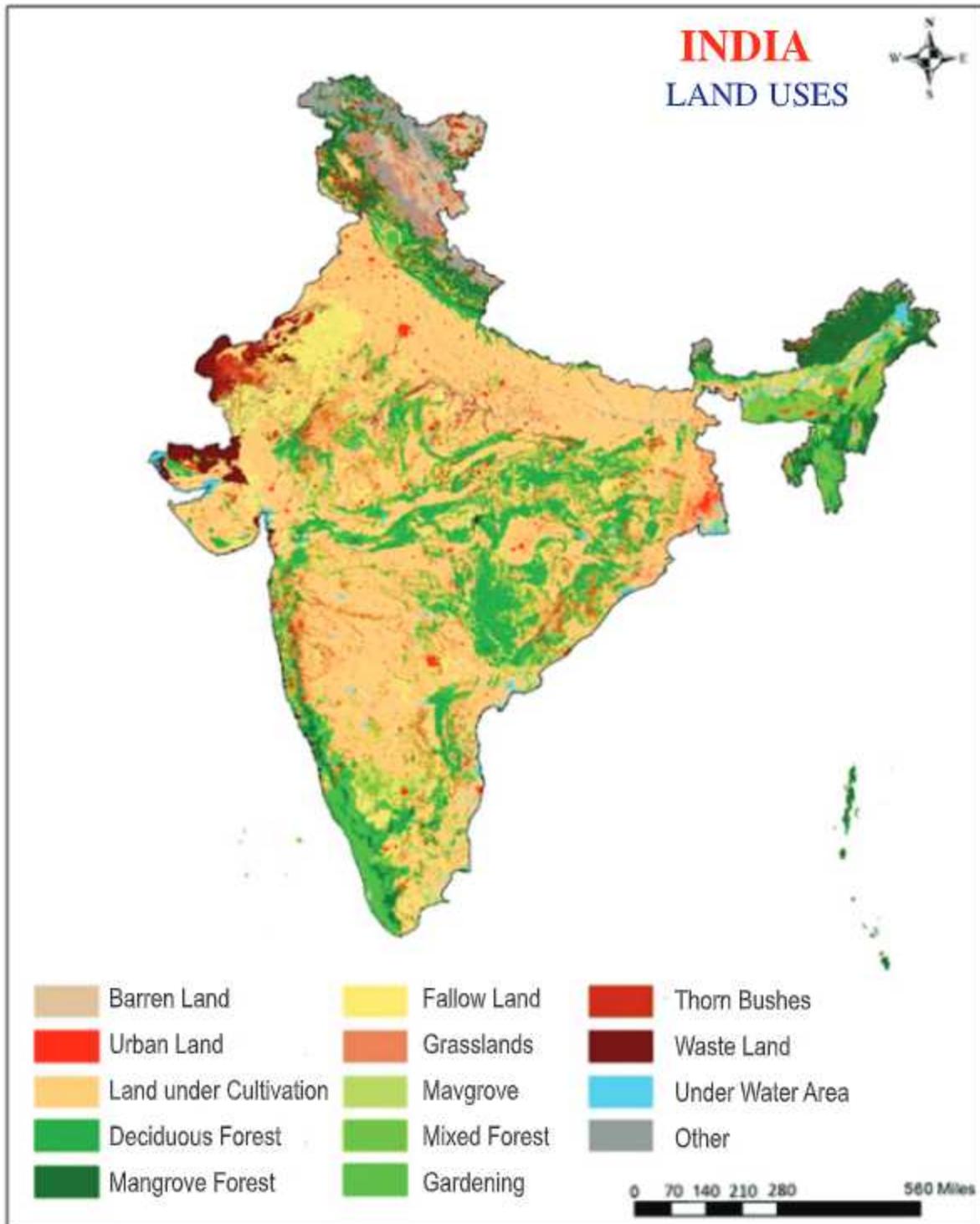


About 22.2% of the total land area of India is under forests. For a densely populated country like India this area should be 33%. Therefore, the plantation of trees should be planted on a larger scale and the cutting of forests should be strictly banned.



Percentage land use in India

About 46% of the total area is net sown area, this is the area on which crops are grown. It is the base of our agriculture, Land not available for cultivation is not used for agricultural purposes. This type of land is covered by settlements like cities, villages,



roads, railways, rivers, lakes, canals etc. This category constitutes 14% of the total land area and includes barren land also.

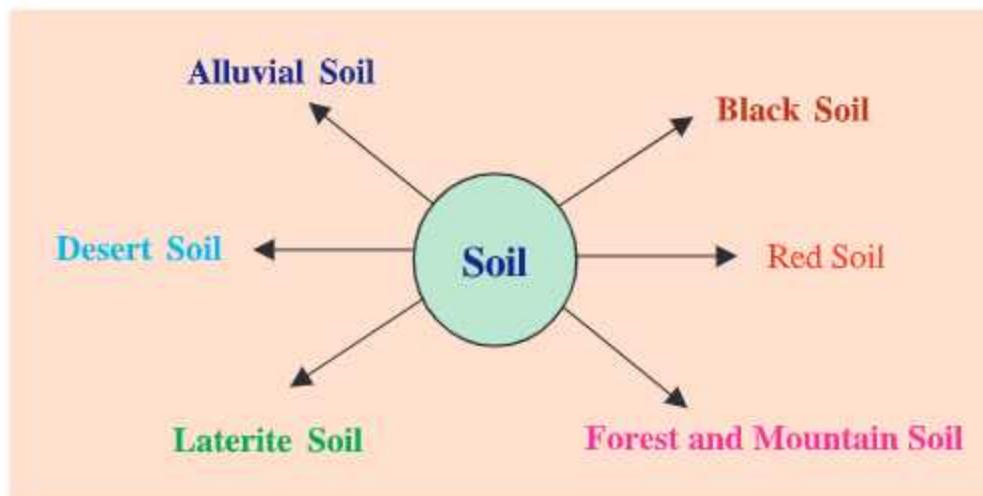
Fallow land constitutes 8% of the total land area of the country. This land is used for agriculture but is left without agriculture for 1 to 5 years. This is done, so that the land acquires its lost fertility. Cultivable waste land is suitable for agriculture but due to some reasons, no agriculture is carried on there. Sometime back agricultural activities were performed but due to reasons like lack of water, excess of salts, soil erosion, water logging or some other reasons the land is not being used for agriculture. About 5% of the total land area comes under this category. Plants and pastures cover 4% of the total land area of the country. The pastures are used to graze the cattle. The present area under pastures is very less. In a state like Punjab the trend of grazing the cattle in open pastures has declined.

Land is very important but a limited resource. This resource can not be increased therefore it becomes very important to use this resource in the best possible way.

II. Soil Resources

Soil is very important factor for the germination and growth of plants. It is a renewable and abiotic resource which can be made fertile by the use of manures and fertilizers. The soil formation is a continuous process. Many factors affect the formation of the soil. Some of the dominant factors are parent rock, climate, plants and other creatures. Time also plays an important role in the formation of soil.

India basically is an agricultural country where 65-70% population is engaged in this or related occupations. Therefore for such a country, the role of soil becomes more important. The soil of our country differs from area to area. In India the following main soil types are found :



Alluvial soil is found over approximately 45% area of the country. This soil contributes a lot towards the development of our agriculture. Mostly brought and deposited by the rivers, in the plains, it is deposited by sea waves also. Having smaller particles, the soil gets deposited over the land by the retreating water of the floods. The operation thus forms very fertile soil. The alluvial soil is subdivided into two categories i.e. Khadar and Bangar. Khadar is newly deposited soil whereas Bangar is the old alluvial soil. In the northern plains of India mainly alluvial soil is found. These plains are also known as Indo-Gangetic - Brahmaputra plains. These plains have been formed by the Indus, the Ganga, the Brahmaputra rivers and their distributaries which come from the north India. These alluvial plains are very significant from the agricultural aspect.

Black soil is also called as 'regur' or 'cotton soil' because this type of soil is highly suitable for cotton growing. The black soil has been formed from the breaking of igneous rocks and covers about 16.6% part of India. This type of soil is mainly found in the states of Maharashtra, Madhya Pradesh, Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh, Gujarat and Tamilnadu. The black soil can retain humidity for a longer period of time. This is a fertile type of soil. Crops like cotton, wheat, jowar, rapeseed, tobacco, sunflower etc. are grown in this type of soil. Rice and sugarcane can also be grown with the help of irrigation. The black soil is very beneficial for agriculture.

Red soil is found over 10.6% area of the country. This soil has been named because of its red colour. The structure and colour of the soil depends upon its parent rock. This type of soil lacks in elements like magnesium, phosphate, nitrogen, lime and organic matter etc. For growing crops, this type of soil is not fertile but its fertility can be improved with the use of fertilizers and irrigation facilities. Wheat, cotton, pulses, potatoes, fruits etc can be grown. This type of soil is found in the states like Tamilnadu, South east Maharashtra, Karnataka, Telangana, Andhra Pradesh, Madhya Pradesh, Bihar, Odisha, Jharkhand, West Bengal, Rajasthan, Assam, Nagaland, Manipur etc.

Laterite soil Almost 90-100% is made up of oxides of iron, aluminium, titanium and manganese. Normally this type of soil is found in the areas of high temperature and heavy rainfall. Due to the rains the fertile nutrients of the soil seep in the low lying layers of the earth and only the oxides are left over the surface of the land. As this type of soil is not fertile due to the lack of fertile nutrients but crops like tea, coffee, rubber, coconut etc can be grown if compensated with fertilisers and irrigation facilities. This type of soil can be found over 7.5% area of the country, The eastern ghats, the western ghats, the Raj Mahal hills, the Vindhyas, the Satpuras and the Malwa Plateau besides the states of Maharashtra, Andhra Pradesh, Odisha, Karnataka, West Bengal, Kerala, Jharkhand and Assam are known for this type of soil.

Forest and Mountainous soil is found in the forests and the mountain slopes. These types of soils are rich in humus. The Eastern and Western Ghats also have this

type of soil. This type of soil lacks Potassium, Phosphorus, and Lime. For growing of crops in these types of soil, fertilizers have to be applied.

Desert soil is found in some areas of Rajasthan, Punjab and Haryana. Some parts of Gujarat also have this type of soil. Desert soil constitutes 4.3% of the total land area of the country. This type of soil has very low capacity of water retention. The water seeps down very soon. Therefore the crops requiring more water cannot be grown in such areas. Oats, bajra, maize, pulses etc. can be grown in this type of soil. The patches of Rajasthan which have been receiving water from Punjab canals, have started producing good crops.

Except the above mentioned types of soils many other types of soils like marshy soils, saline and alkaline soils, terai soils etc. are also found. As these types of soils cover very less percentage of land area therefore become negligible and are not of much importance. These soils are limited only to some parts of India.

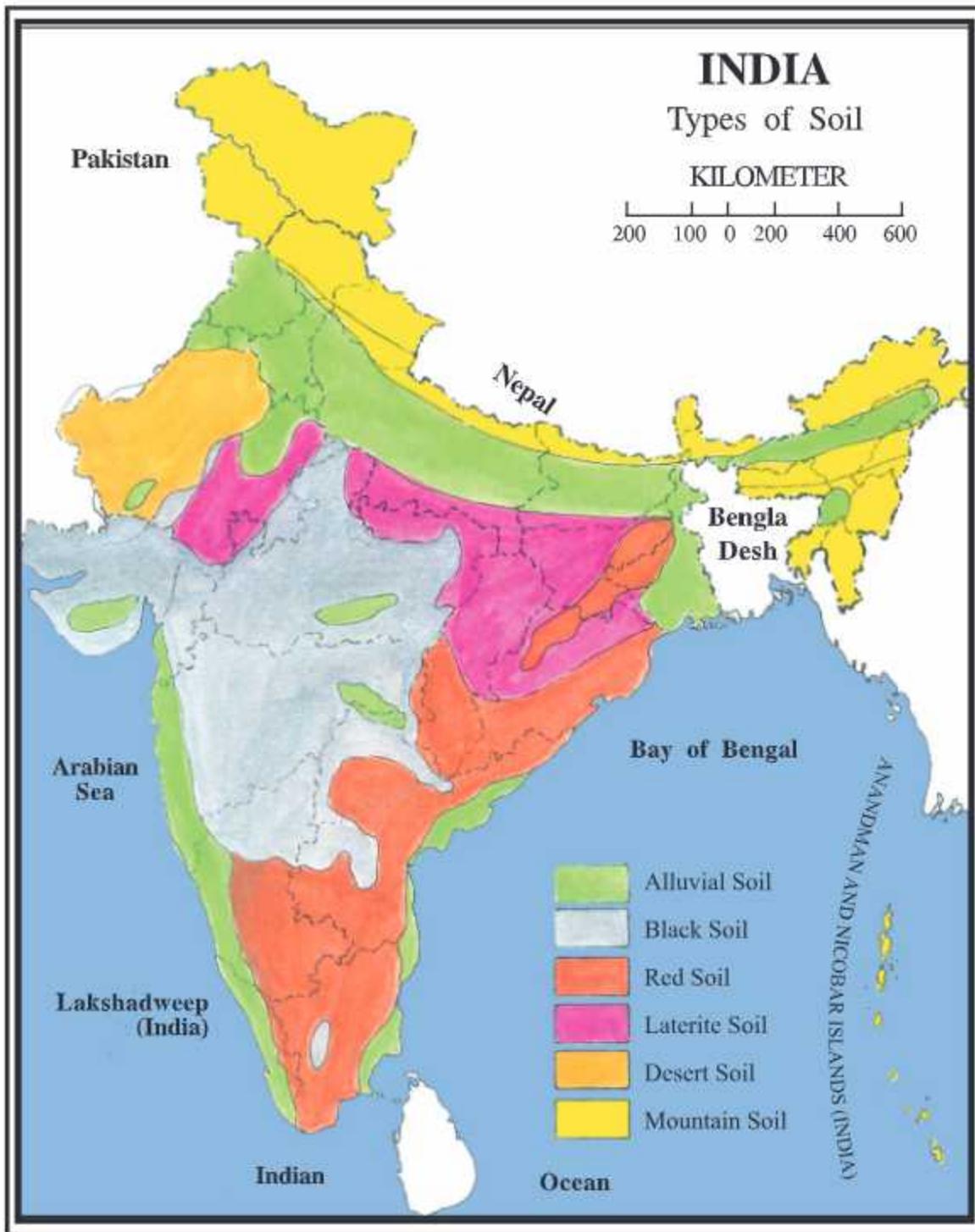
Problems of Soil Resources

Without a resource like soil the life of man is incomplete. Whatever man eats depends on soil. For agriculture the soil should be fertile but its fertility does not remain forever. The reason for this is that the soil has to face problems, some of which are mentioned below :

- (I) Soil erosion
- (II) Reduction in the fertility
- (III) Sandy conditioning
- (IV) Acidity or alkanity
- (V) Use of soil beyond its capacity.
- (VI) Water logging

Conservation of Soil :

This resource is very important therefore we should protect this precious resource. We should solve the problems which are being faced by this resource. We should control soil erosion. The soil should be protected from water logging by draining the excess water out. Floods should be stopped by constructing the dams over the rivers. If we control the floods, the problem of soil erosion will be solved and also the waste land lying around the rivers can be used for the purpose of agriculture. The wrong agricultural practices also weaken the soil therefore it becomes necessary to use good methods of agriculture. The fertility of the soil can be maintained and used for a longer time if this resource is used wisely and carefully.



III. Water Resources :

Water is very valuable and important resource. If there is life on the earth, it is only because of the existence of water. There is no other alternative to water resource. Water fulfils numerous human requirements. It is used for drinking, bathing, washing, agriculture, Industry and many other puposes. About 71% area of the earth is constituted of water only. The earth is also known as the 'water planet.'

Distribution of water over the Earth :

Oceans, sea and salty lakes	–	97.20%
Ice Caps, and glaciers	–	2.15%
Lakes, rivers and streams	–	0.0085%
Water in the biosphere and atmosphere	–	0.0015%
Underground Water	–	0.64%

Use of water in the world

Water is used by man for various activities. About 93.37% of the total used water goes towards agriculture. For the drinking purposes i.e., water supply to the villages, towns and cities is around 3.73%, for industry and electricity generation, 1.26% of the 56% water is used. About 1.08% water is utilized for rearing of cattle. About 0.5% water is used for other activities.

Sources of water for man

The whole of the water which is available on the earth is not being used by man. He is using only some limited and fresh water resources. These usable water sources are given as under :-

- (I) Rainfall
- (II) Rivers and streams
- (III) Canals
- (IV) Tanks
- (V) Underground water

Rainfall is an important source of water supply but it is highly variable. Some places get heavy rainfall, where as others get very low. The annual average raifall in India is 118 cm. Though the whole of rainfall water is not used by the man yet it percolates beneath the earth and contributes to the undergorund water. The level of the underground water goes deep and becomes saltish in nature in the areas receiving low rainfall.

The rivers and streams have contributed a lot towards the human development since the beginning of the civilization. Man had started living around these rivers and streams.

The rivers may be divided into two categories, the perennial rivers which originate from the melting of snow, and the seasonal rivers which depend on rain water.

At various places dams have been constructed and canal have been dug. The water of these canals is being used for irrigation and other human activities. With the digging of these canals the agriculture has undergone a big change.

Tanks are found mostly in the areas lacking in perennial rivers. The level of the underground water is either too deep or not fit for use. Rain water is collected in the tanks in these areas and is used when needed. In Southern India the tanks are main source of water for the people.

Conservation of water

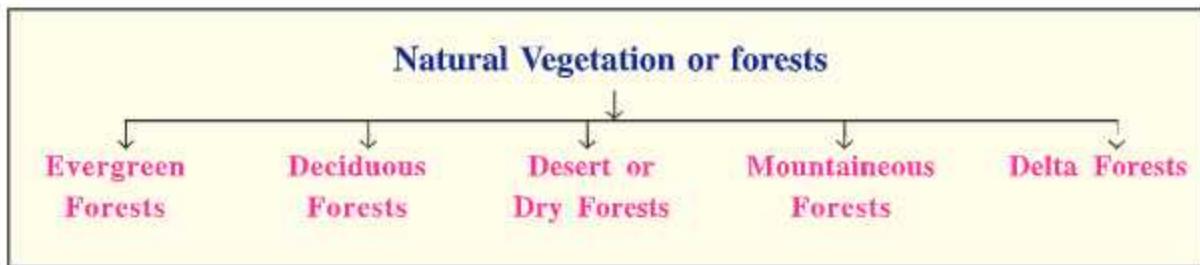
As water has a great significance in human life therefore its conservation becomes very important. The most important view is that water should not be used more than its requirement. Irrigation should be done as and when required. New methods like sprinklers should be used for irrigation. The rain water can be stored in the dams which can be used afterwards at the time when needed. There can be rainwater harvesting also. It may recharge the underground water and raise its level. There can be recycling of water too. The sewerage water can also be used for irrigation after its treatment. In the end we can say that the water should be used in such a way, it should not cause scarcity of water among plants and animals on the earth.

IV. Natural Vegetation Resources

Natural vegetation is a gift of nature which is categorized as a renewable resource. Natural Vegetation depends on climate, soil and some other factors. The climate is very important of all the factors. The climate is mainly combination of humidity and temperature. The vegetation grows and develop because of temperature and humidity. For example in the areas of high temperature and heavy rainfall dense equatorial forests are found. Different types of vegetation is found in different parts of the world. The type of vegetation mainly depends on the climate, soil type and altitude of that place from the sea level.

The natural vegetation also called as forests which fulfils numerous human needs. The wood which we get from the forests is used as fuel wood as well as in large industry. We get many types of fruits, medicines and other products from the forests or natural vegetation.

Due to the variation in temperature and rainfall in different parts of India, different types of natural vegetation is found. The natural vegetation or forests of India can be divided into following types :



Evergreen forests remain green throughout the year. These plants do not shed their leaves completely in any season or weather. This type of vegetation is found in the areas of heavy rainfall. Evergreen forests are found on Western Ghats in South India, north east parts of West Bengal and Assam and lower slopes of the Himalayas. This type of forests are also found in some parts of Karnataka where rainfall is received from the retreating monsoons. Trees like teak and rosewood on the Himalayan slopes and ebony, neem and tamarind in Karnataka are found.

Deciduous forest trees shed their leaves before spring i.e. autumn season. The leaves grow / appear again in spring season. More of deciduous type of vegetation is found in South India. These forests are very important as far as availability of wood is concerned. We get wood of sal, teak, bamboo, shisham and Khair trees from these forests.

Desert Vegetation is found in the area with low rainfall. Due to the lack of rainfall very sparse type of vegetation is found. This type of vegetation is available in Rajasthan, Gujarat and some parts of Haryana. Acacia, date, cactus and thorny bushes are dominant plants of desert type of vegetation. This type of vegetation is not significant because it does not produce good quality wood.

Mountaineous vegetation grows over the slopes of the mountains. The Himalayan slopes from Kashmir to Assam are covered with different types of trees and plants. The wood from these trees is highly useful and therefore of great importance. Various types of trees like pine, fir, deodar, oak, chestnut, maple, poplar etc. are available in this type of vegetation. This is costly and good quality of wood. This type of wood is used in buildings, rail coaches, match box industry and making good quality furniture. We get many types of fruits like apple, almond, plum, chestnut from mountaineous trees.

Delta type of vegetation is found near the sea coasts. The rivers make deltas before entering the sea. The vegetation grown in these deltas is known as delta type of vegetation. This type of vegetation is available in the deltaic parts of Ganga-Brahmaputra, named Sunderbans. Some other rivers of South India also form deltas. Sundry, neem or palm etc. are the dominant trees over here. The use of sundry wood is very significant. Ganga-Brahmaputra delta is also known as 'Sunderbans Delta' because of the presence of sundry trees in large number.

Natural vegetation fulfils man's numerous needs. It provides different use fulitens like, furniture, raw material for paper making, adhesives, lubricants, rubber, dyes, medicinal plants and shrubs and various types of fruits. It also provides natural habitat to many birds and wild animals. It contributes towards flood control and checks the expansion of soil erosion and desertification. Vegetation also helps in bringing rain and therefore maintains the natural balance. Therefore, the forests must be protected and efforts should be made to increase in the area under foress.

V. Wildlife Resources

The creature living in the forests are called wild life resources. The forests are considered their natural habitat. These creatures are birds, insects and animals. In the big grasslands and forests of the world a large number of creatures are found. In India more than 80,000 species of animals are found. The animals found mainly include elephant, lion, leopard, tiger, bear, yak, rhinoceros, deer, monkey, ape, jackal, fox etc. Other than these, squirrel, mongoose, tortoise and many kinds of snakes are also found. Many species of birds come in large numbers to India from the cold regions like Siberia, China etc. during winters. These birds are known as 'migratory birds. Many types of birds and fishes are also found in India.

Protection and Conservation of Wildlife : Man had been hunting the birds and animals since its inception. Perhaps it was necessary for the primitive man to kill these birds and animals for his food but present day man has a lot of other products to eat. Therefore, to kill the birds and animals does not bring a good name to man now.

Many species of animals have become extinct till date and many others are at the verge of extinction. Therefore, we should hesitate to kill the animals and contribute towards their protection. Our government is also taking many steps in this direction. For this purpose Indian Board for Wildlife was established in the year 1952. Besides this, the programmes like 'Project Tiger 1973' and 'Project Elephant 1992' were being run to protect the wild animals. In the years 1972 and 2002 government passed the Acts for the protection of the wildlife. Many National Parks and wildlife sancturies have been established to protect the wildlife. At present there are 89 national parks and 490 wild life sanctuaries. At our level we should also stop hunting of birds and the animals. The forests which act as the natural habitat for the wildlife should not be cut. Our government should implement the laws which have been made for the protection of wildlife, strictly.

Conservation of Natural Resources : Man should use the available natural resources very carefully. No resource should be wasted. While using the resources for ourselves, we should also keep into mind the needs of the coming generations. The real conservation of resources lies in its needful and optimal use.

POINTS TO REMEMBER

Natural Resources : Natural Products or treasures are called 'Natural Resources.'

As	-	Land	Natural Vegetation
		Soil	Wildlife
		Water	Mineral and power Resources

Land Resource : It is very significant for agriculture and other human activities.

Use of Land in India :

- Land under forests
- Net sown area
- Land not available for cultivation
- Fallow land
- Culturable waste land
- land under pastures and plants.

Soil Resource : It is essential resource to grow plants and crops.

- Types of Soil**
- Alluvial soil
 - Black soil
 - Desert soil
 - Laterite soil
 - Forests and Mountain soil.

Solution of the problems being faced by the soils and its conservation is very important

Water Resources : It is very precious resource.

Consumption of water in the world.

Sources of water for man – Rainfall, Rivers, canals, ponds and underground water & Conservation of water resources-

Natural Vegetation : It depends upon the climate, type of soil and height of a place from the sea level.

Types : Evergreen, Deciduous, Desert, Mountainous & Deltaic
Importance and its Conservation.

Wildlife : Name of birds and animals.
Efforts of the Govt. to save (protect) the wild life.



I. Answer the following questions in 01-15 words :

1. In which relief features land can be divided ?
2. What is the importance of plains ?
3. How many types of soil is found in India ? Write the names of the types.
4. What type of crops may be grown on black soil ?
5. Write the names of main sources of water.
6. What is given by the natural vegetation to man ?
7. What are 'migratory birds' and where do they come from ?

II. Answer the following questions in 50-60 words.

1. Mentioning the major types of soils, write the importance of Alluvial soil.
2. How is the soil resource being conserved ?
3. Give the importance of rivers and canals.
4. How the water can be conserved ?
5. Write a note on the deciduous forests.
6. What steps have been taken by the government of India for the protection and conservation of wildlife ?

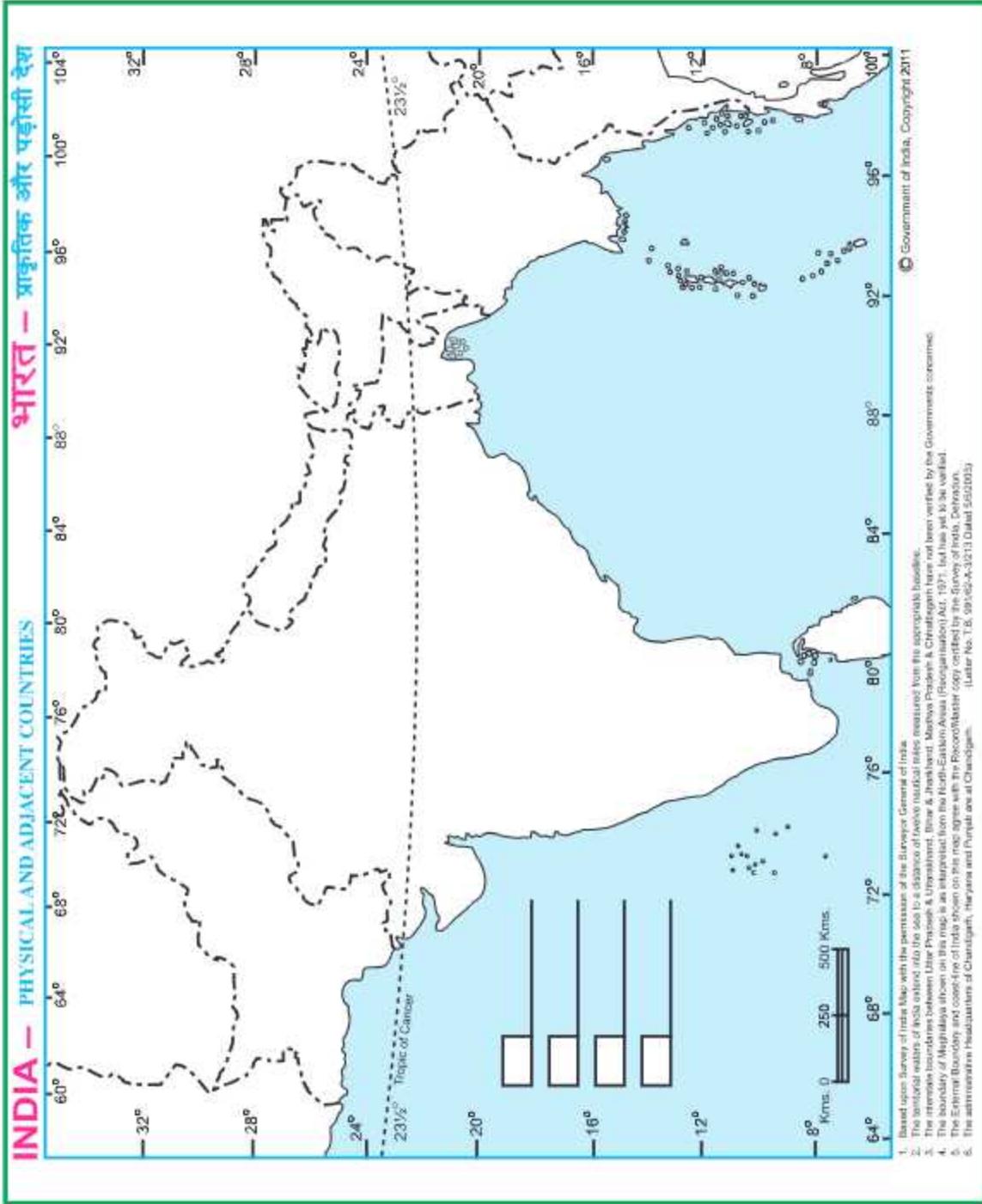
III. Show the following in the map of India :

1. Northern plains of India.
2. Ganga & Brahmaputra Rivers.
3. Region of alluvial soil.
4. A state with black soil.
5. An area of evergreen forests.
6. One region each with mountainous and delta type of vegetation.

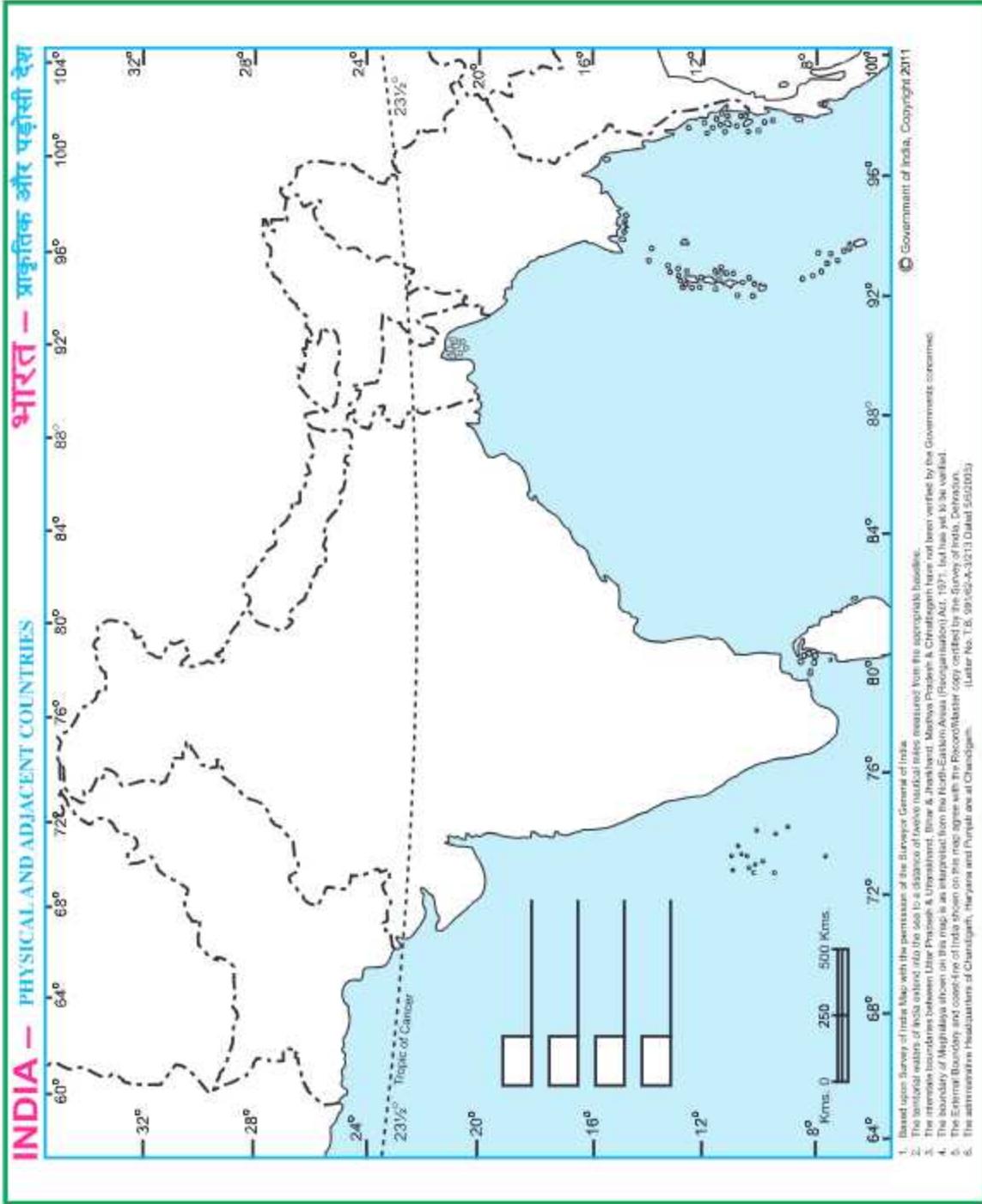
IV. Activity :

Show six types of soil on a political map of India, give various colours to show different types in different states.

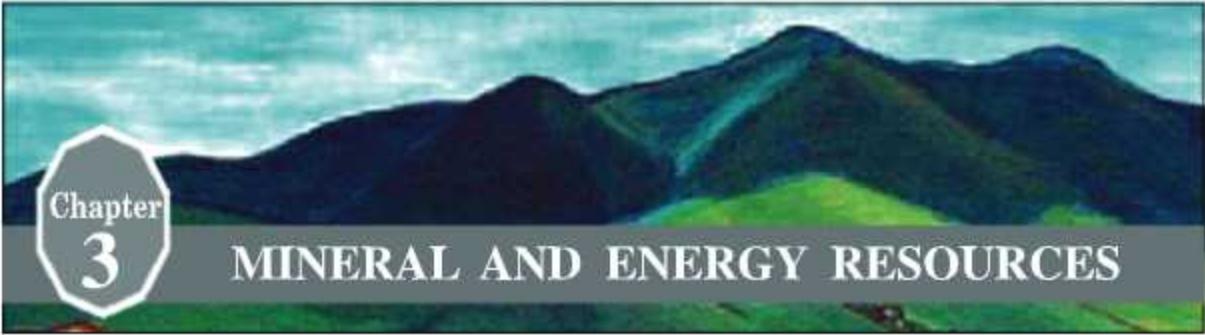




Name Class Roll No. Teacher Signature



Name Class Roll No. Teacher Signature



Chapter
3
MINERAL AND ENERGY RESOURCES

Both minerals and energy resources are very significant as far as the development of any country is concerned. The countries which possess more reserves of these resources are deemed to be in the category of rich countries.

Minerals are those natural products which are made of one or more elements and are dug out from the earth. These minerals have specific chemical composition. These are known for their physical and chemical properties. The minerals can be divided into the following categories.



Some Important minerals have been discussed below :

Iron-Ore :

Five percent of the Earth's crust is composed of iron-ore and it is highly usable. This metal is used to make many products. It is not found in pure form in the earth and it has many impurities. The impurities are removed in the industries and pure iron is extracted. Four types of Iron-ore is found beneath the earth's crust, these types are :

- | | |
|----------------|----------------|
| (i) Magnetite | (iii) Limonite |
| (ii) Haematite | (iv) Siderite |

Russia and its neighbouring countries, Australia, Brazil and United States of America possess large reserves of iron-ore. India produces 5.5% of the total world iron-ore productions.

India has almost all types of iron-ore but mainly found type is haematite. Bihar, Odisha, Madhya Pradesh, Goa, Andhra Pradesh, Chhattisgarh, Jharkhand and Tamilnadu are iron-ore producing states of India. Singhbhum in Bihar, Mayurbhanj in Odisha, Durg & Bastar in Chhattisgarh, Mysore, Belari & Dharwar in Karnataka are the region known for production of good quality iron-ore.

Manganese

Manganese is used in preparation of iron and steel products. It is highly used in the production of ferro-alloys. Approximately 6 kilograms of manganese is used for manufacturing one tonne of steel. It is also used in the manufacturing of bleaching powder, insecticides, paints, batteries etc. India stands second to Zimbabwe in the reserves of manganese but in production it occupies fifth place.

Manganese is found mainly in the states of Karnataka, Odisha, Madhya Pradesh, Maharashtra and Goa. Manganese in small quantities is also found in the states of Telangana, Andhra Pradesh, Jharkhand, Gujarat, Rajasthan and West Bengal.

Manganese is found in Sundergarh, Kalahandi, Koraput, Bolangir and Sambalpur districts of Odisha. Nagpur, Bhandora and Patnagiri in Maharashtra, Balaghat and Chhindwara in Madhya Pradesh are the most famous districts for Manganese production.

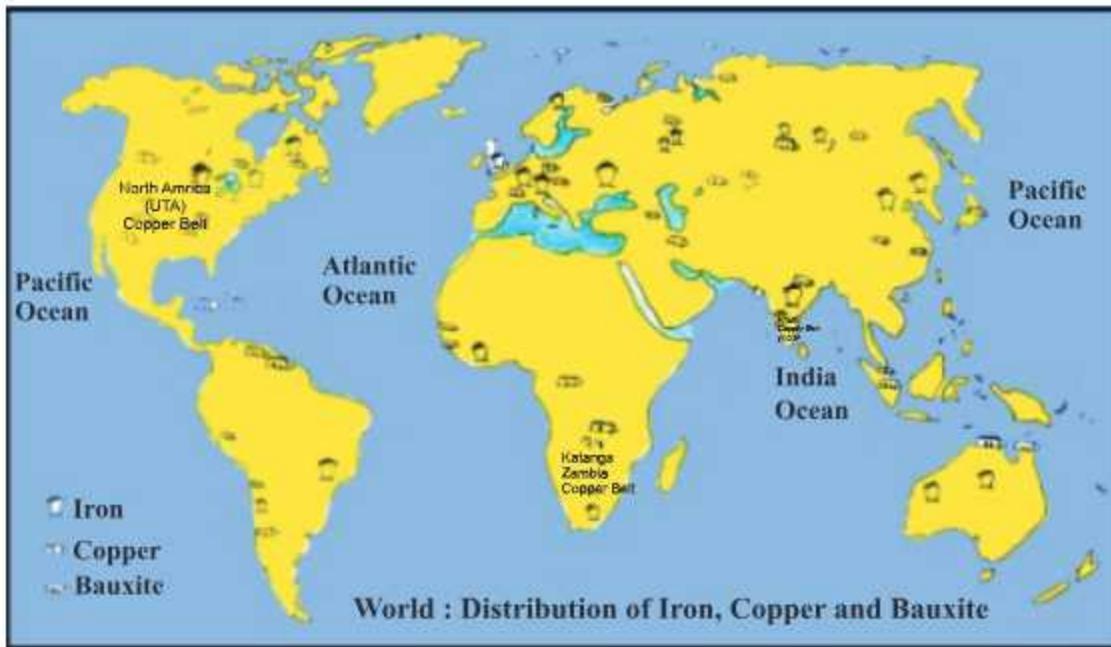
Copper

Copper is a soft and brown coloured metal which is found in the igneous and metamorphic rocks. It is being used by man for a very long time. Copper is a soft metal but when it is mixed with tin it is known as bronze which is a hard and solid substance. This bronze is used for making tools and weapons. The copper is used in the production of utensils, coins, electric wires and other electrical equipments on a very large scale. Being a soft and good quality metal, copper can be turned into very thin sheets.

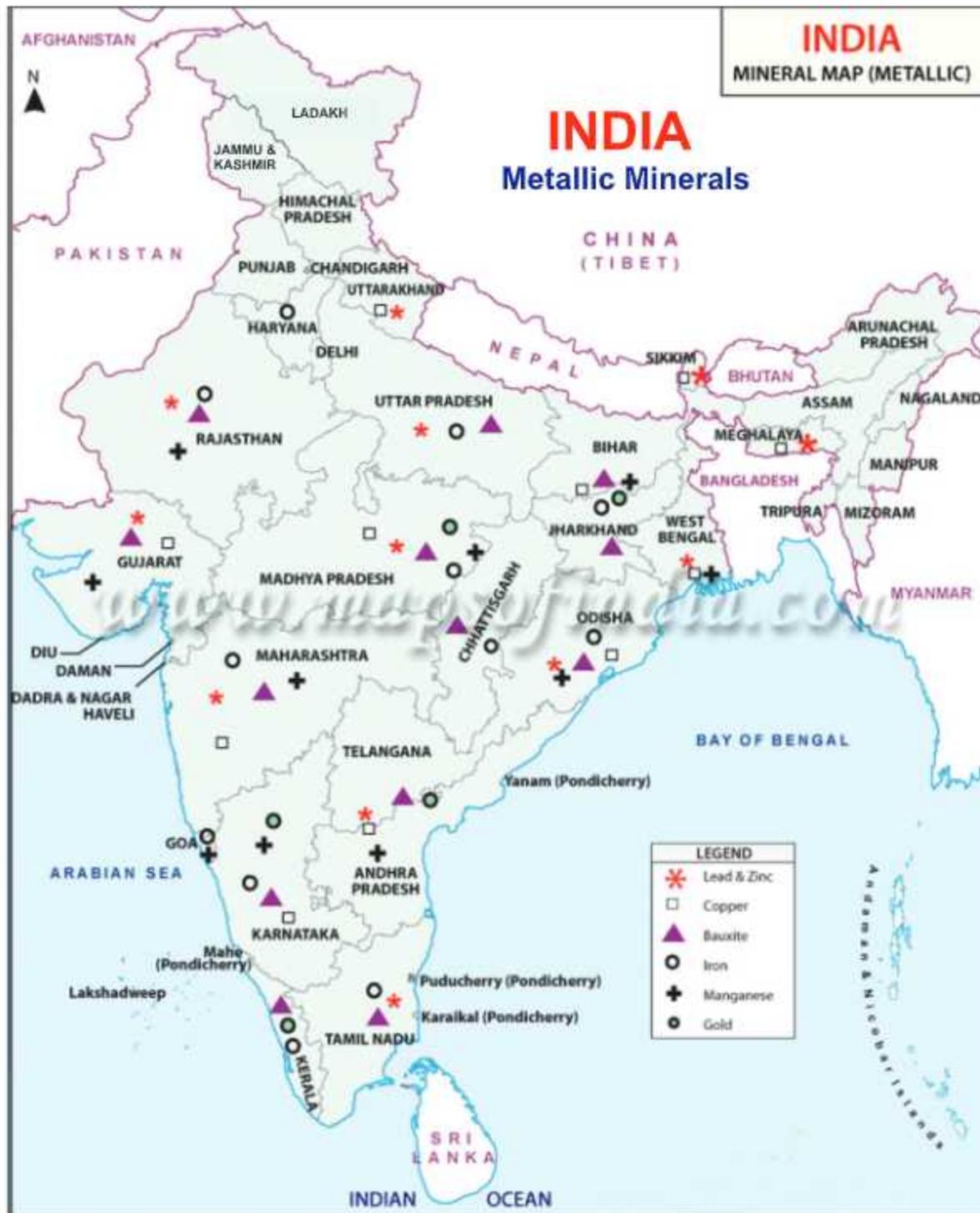
United States of America, Russia, Chile, Zambia, Canada and Zaire are the important copper producing countries of the world. India lags behind in the production of copper. The reserves of copper are found in Singhbhum (Jharkhand), Balaghat (Madhya Pradesh), Jhunjhunu and Alwar (Rajasthan) districts in India. Copper is also found in some quantities in the states of Gujarat, Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh, Uttar Pradesh, Sikkim, Meghalaya, Maharashtra and West Bengal.

Bauxite

Bauxite is an important ore from which aluminium is made. This is a clay type metal which contains aluminium oxide. It is white or pink in colour. The methods of extracting aluminium from bauxite was unknown till 1886. Therefore, its use was not



World distribution of gold and diamond production



possible but today aluminium is being used in many industries on a large scale. From the utility point it has left behind the metals like tin and copper. It is used mainly in the manufacturing of utensils, electric wires, automobiles, railways, ships, aeroplanes etc.

Australia, Jamaica, Ginnia, Surinam, Russia, Hungary, United States of America are important bauxite producing countries.

India does not produce much of bauxite, Jharkhand, Chhattisgarh, Madhya Pradesh, Orissa, Gujarat, Karnataka, Tamilnadu, Andhra Pradesh, Jammu & Kashmir, Kerala, Uttar Pradesh and Rajasthan are important bauxite producing states of India.

Odish is the leading state in the production of bauxite. Kalahandi, Koraput, Sundergarh and Sambalpur districts are important areas of bauxite production in Orissa. Gujarat State stands next to Odish in production. Jamnagar, Juhagarh, Khera, Kachchh, Amreli and Bhavnagar districts are important bauxite producing regions of Gujarat.

Gold

Man has been using gold for a very long time. It is very attractive metal due to its colour and brightness. Jewellery and other ornaments are made from this metal. It is a costly metal because of its less production and more demand. It is used for beautification of teeth, as gold leaves and in some medicines.

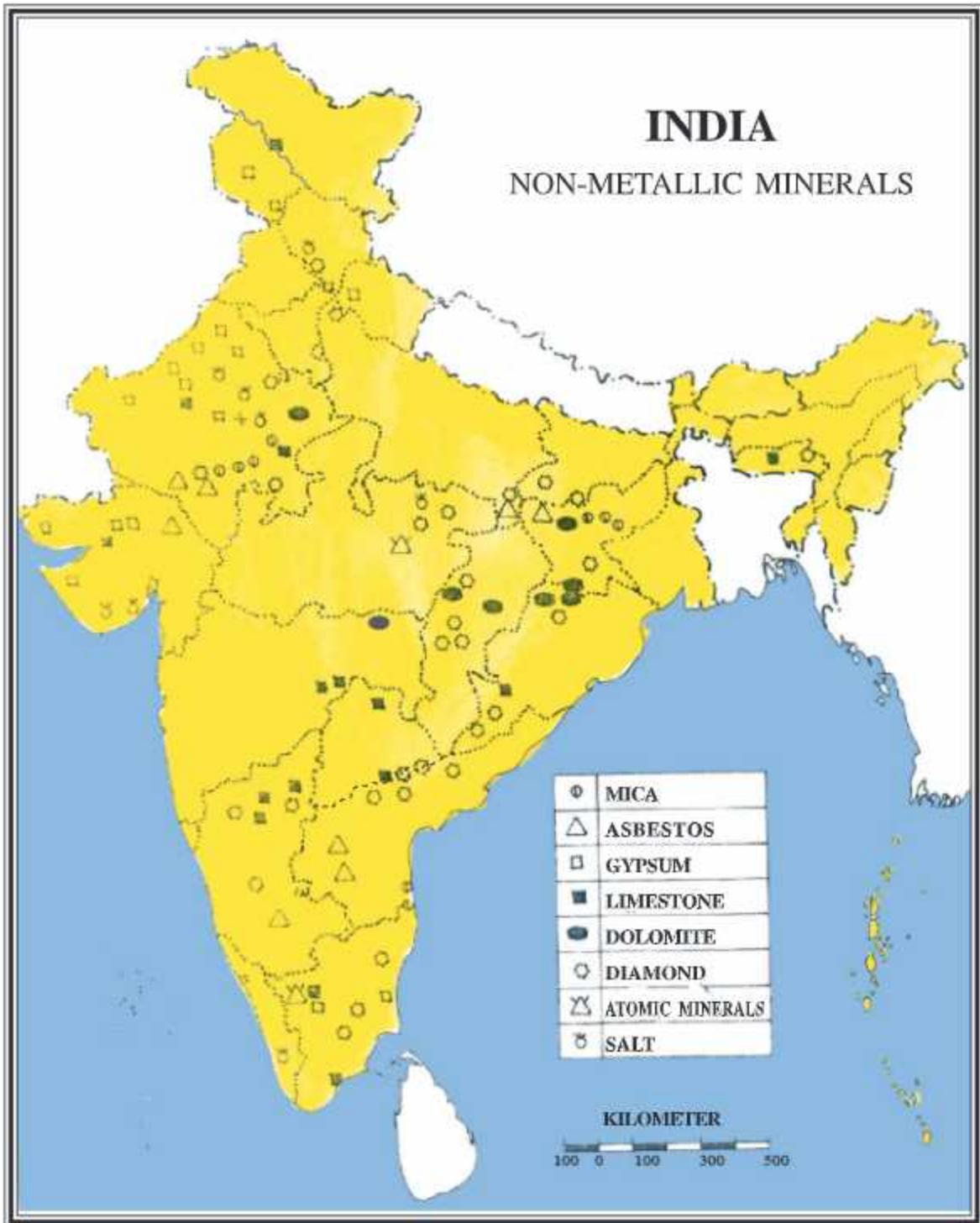
South Africa is the leading producer of gold in the world. It produces approximately 70% of the total world production of gold. Canada, Japan, U.S.A., Australia, Philippines and Ghana are other important gold producing countries. Almost every country of the world produces gold.

India produces approximately 0.75% of the total of world production. Karnataka is the leading gold producing state of the country. Two of the three main gold producing regions i.e. Kolar (distt. Kolar) and Hatti (distt. Raichur) are in Karnataka and the third one i.e. Ramgiri (distt. Anantpur) is in the state of Andhra Pradesh. In spite of these, some gold is also found in the states of Jharkhand and Kerala.

Mica

Mica is a transparent substance, black, brown or white in colour. It can be broken into small layers. Mica is a non-metallic mineral which is found in the igneous rocks. It is used in many industries. Being a bad conductor of electricity it is used in the manufacturing of many electrical appliances. It is also used in the condensers, insulators, electric irons, heaters, radios and televisions.

U.S.A., Russia, India, France, Argentina and South Korea are the major mica producing countries.



India has been a leader in its production but now its production is reducing. The main reasons for decline in production includes less demand from other countries and its substitution with other plastic products.

About 95% of mica in India is obtained from the states namely Andhra Pradesh, Rajasthan and Jharkhand, Bihar, Gujarat, Kerala, Madhya Pradesh, Chhattisgarh, Himachal Pradesh etc. are other mica producing states. Nellore, Vishakhapatnam, Krishna (Andhra Pradesh) Jaipur, Udaipur, Bhilwara (Rajasthan), Gaya (Bihar), Hazaribagh (Jharkhand) are the major mica producing districts of the country.

Atomic Minerals

Uranium, Thorium, Beryllium, Lithium and Zirconium etc. are included in the category of atomic minerals. The energy which is produced from these minerals is known as atomic energy. For production of atomic energy, the availability of these minerals and technical know how are must. Atomic energy centres have been established in the countries like U.S.A., Russia, Japan, U.K. and India.

U.S.A. is the largest producer of Uranium in the world. The other Uranium producing countries include Canada, South Africa, Zaire, Australia, Germany, Spain etc. Thorium is found in Brazil, Australia, Malayasia, Sri Lanka and India. The production of atomic minerals in India is given as below :

Uranium – Singhbhum, Hazaribagh (Jharkhand), Gaya (Bihar), Saharanpur (Uttar Pradesh), Udaipur (Rajasthan).

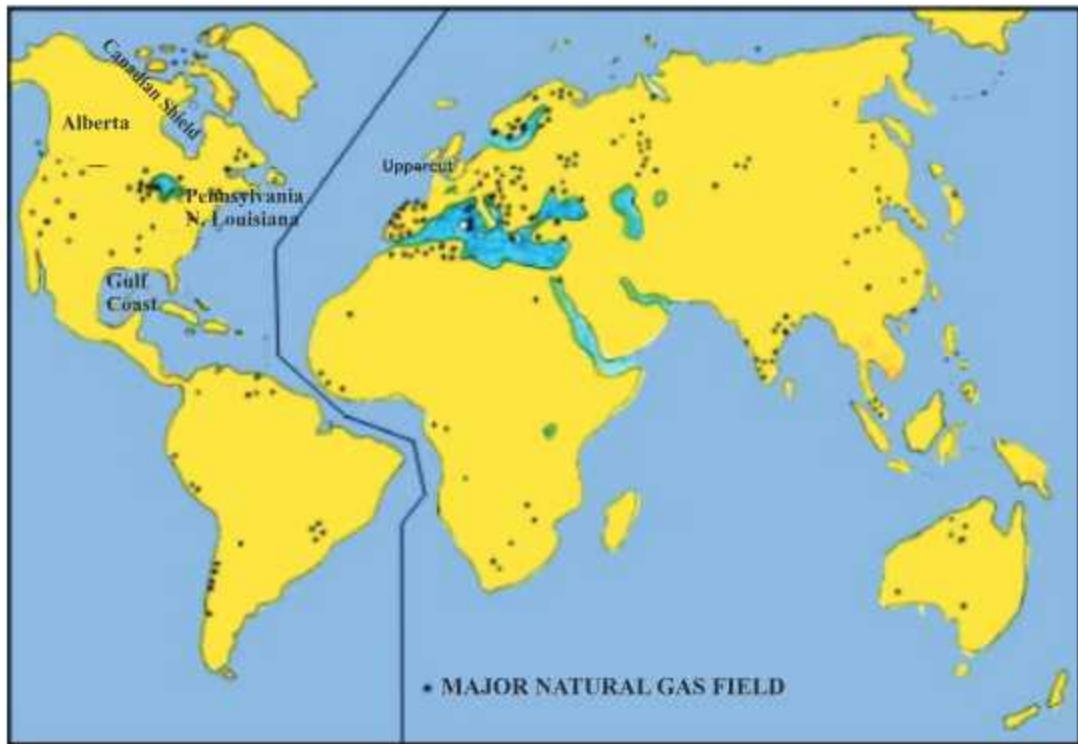
Thorium – States of Kerala, Jharkhand, Bihar, Rajasthan and Tamilandu.

Lithium – Jharkhand, Madhya Pradesh, Rajasthan, Chhattisgarh and Kerala states.

These atomic minerals should be used very carefully. These should only be used for the development of the country by generating energy and not for destruction and pollution. It will be a very wise step.

Energy Resources

The resources which provide energy for man's various activities are called energy resources. Man needs energy from domestic use to the use in big industries. There are some energy resources which the man has been using for a very long time. These include coal, oil and natural gas. These energy resources are known as '**conventional sources of energy.**' On the other hand the man has started using or is continuously searching for some other resources. These are cheaper, new, renewable and pollution-free sources of energy. These are called, '**non-conventional sources of energy**'. These include solar energy, wind energy, sea-waves energy, tidal energy, cowdung energy, energy from other waste materials, geothermal energy, hydro electricity etc. Now we will study about some conventional as well as non-conventional sources of energy.



World : Distribution of Natural Gas

Coal

Coal is black or brown coloured organic substance in which carbon is the main constituent. It is an inflammable substance. It is used for heating and lighting or for both the purposes, big industries and for numering the railways. Coal is also used in the thermal plants for the generation of electricity. On the basis of carbon content the coal can be divided into following four categories :-

- | | |
|----------------|----------------|
| (i) Anthracite | (ii) Bituminus |
| (iii) Lignite | (iv) Peat |

Of the four categories of coal, anthracite is the best and peat is the lowest quality of coal. Coal is obtained from the sedimentary rocks under the earth. Earth is being dug to reach the coal mines. It is very risky to work in coal mines.

Coal is found in many countries of the world, U.S.A. ranks first in the production of coal (24%). China, Russia, Poland and U.K. occupy second, third, fourth and fifth place respectively in the production of coal. India produces about 4% of total world coal and occupies the sixth position.

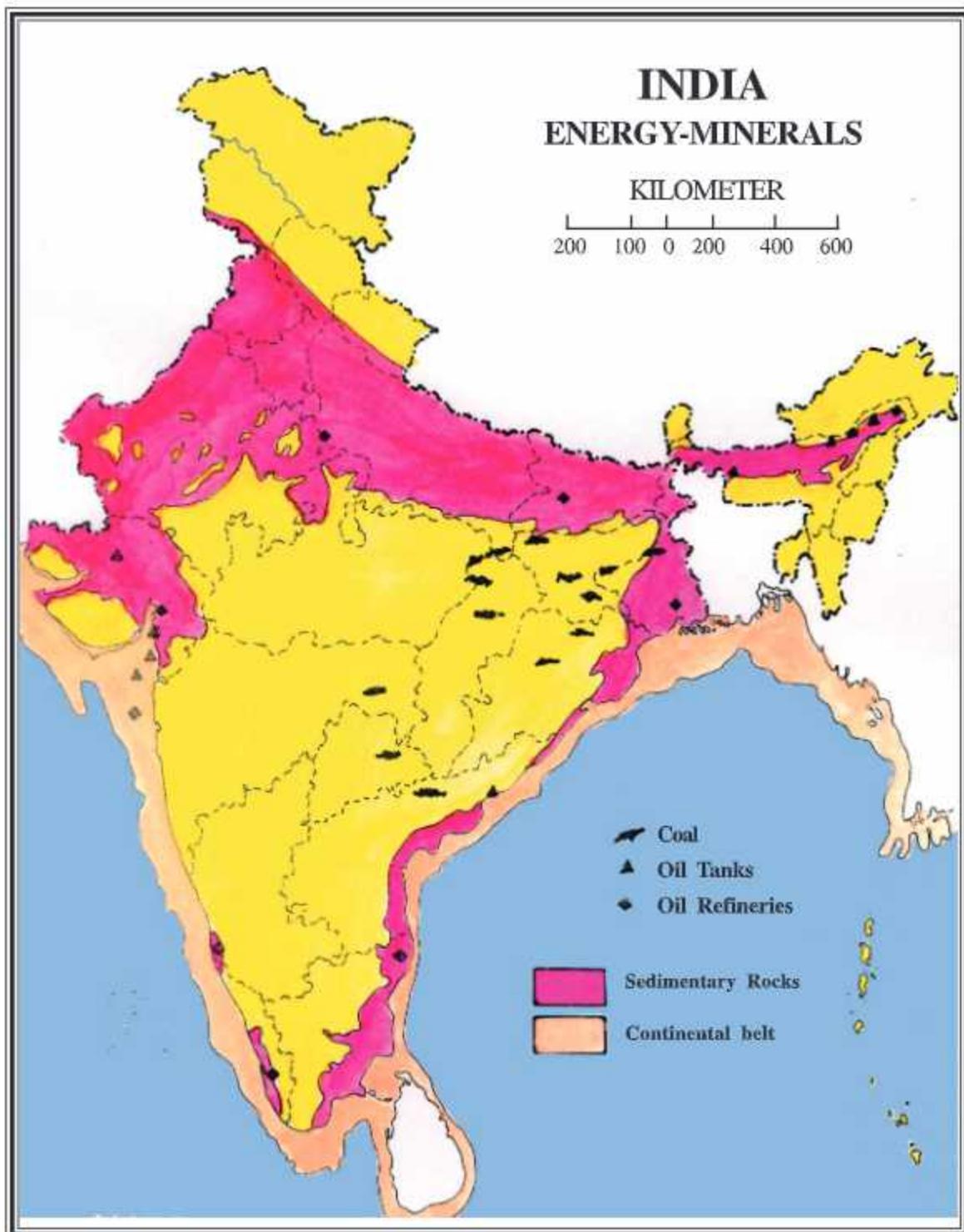
Coal is found in many states of India. Jharkhand leads in production as well as the reserves of coal and produces about 23% coal of the country. Damka, Hazaribagh, Dhanbad and Pallamu are the major coal producing regions of Jharkhand. Jharia, Bokaro, Girdih and Karanpura are other important coal producing regions.

Chhattisgarh and Odisha produce coal in very large quantities. Korba, Birampur, Lakhanpur, Jhilmili (Chhattisgarh), Sambalpur, Sundergarh (Odisha) are important coal producing regions.

Coal is also produced in the states of Madhya Pradesh, Andhra Pradesh, West Bengal, Maharashtra, Uttar Pradesh. Assam, Bihar, Meghalya, Arunachal Pradesh and Nagaland.

Petroleum or Mineral Oil :

Petroleum or mineral oil is found in the sedimentary rocks, therefore, it is also called 'rock oil'. In present day world studded with machinery, petroleum substances have special importance. Petroleum is also known as 'liquid gold.' Oil is used in many machines, automobiles and industries. All the means of transport from scooter to aroplanes depend upon mineral oil only. Although the reasons behind its accumulation in the rocks are not fully known yet it is assumed that it is an organic substance which comes from the decaying and decomposing of plants, animals and other creatures in the sedimentary rocks. The oil which is extracted from the earth cannot be used directly. This is known as 'crude oil.' This crude oil is refined and categorised in the oil refineries.



Oil is extracted in many countries of the world. U.S.A., Russia and its adjoining countries and China have good reserves of oil. Middle East countries- Iran, Iraq, Saudi Arabia, Bahrain and Kuwait etc. all are very rich in Petroleum products. Oil is also extracted in many countries of Australia, Africa and South America continents.

The position of India regarding petroleum production is not very sound. It produces approximately 33.4 million tonnes (2003-04) of crude oil. Assam, Arunachal Pradesh, Gujarat, Maharashtra, Tamilnadu and Rajasthan states of India are producing petroleum products. Digboi, Naharkatia, Moran, Hugarijan (Assam), Ankleshwar, Khambat, Ahmedabad (Gujarat), Barmer (Rajasthan). Manbhum (Arunachal Pradesh) and Mumbai High (Maharashtra) are major mineral oil producing areas of the country.

Natural Gas

Natural gas is produced from the petroleum products. When any oil well is dug, natural gas is found accumulated over it. Natural gas is also a very good energy resource. It is used for cooking, as fuel for vehicles and in various industries. Natural gas is found at all the oil producing regions of the world.

U.S.A. is the largest producer of natural gas in the world. Russia, Middle East countries, Canada, Uzbekistan, Azerbaijan are other major natural gas producing countries of the world.

Natural gas is found in many areas of India. Krishna-Godawari basin, a place in Bay of Bengal near Odisha and Barmer in Rajasthan are very important natural gas producing areas. Possibilities of natural gas have also been found in Khambat and Kachh in Gujarat and Tripura states. About 75% of the total natural gas comes from Mumbai High. Approximately 11% of the natural gas is being produced in the state of Gujarat.

Hydro Electricity

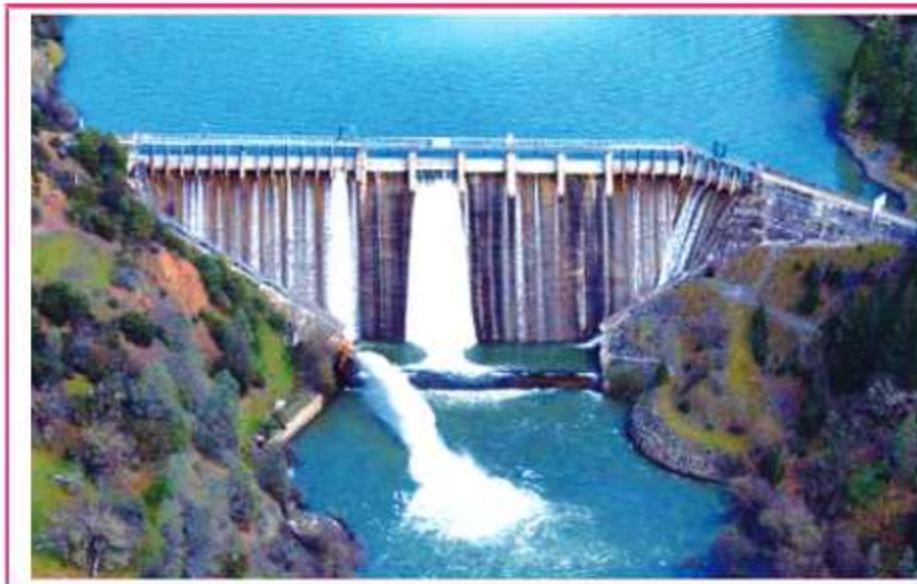
Hydro electricity is a non conventional source of energy. This source of energy depends on the renewable water resource. Electricity is produced mainly by two methods, one from water i.e. hydro-electricity and the other from burning of oil or coal in the thermal plants. Here we will study about hydro-electricity.

Water is a free and renewable resource. Large quantities of water is available in the world which can be used for generation of hydro-electricity. Water is thrown over turbines through tunnels by constructing dams over rivers and streams. The turbines are rotated with the force of water. When these turbines rotate, electricity is produced by frictional force. This electricity is then taken to various places through wires.

Important factors for generation of hydro electricity

- (i) The water source should be perinnial in nature.
- (ii) There should be required slope or height in the path of the water.
- (iii) Sufficient amount of water for generation of electricity should be available.
- (iv) There should be sufficient space behind the dam for reservoir or take of water.
- (v) Capital for constructions of dams, power stations and electricity supply lines should be available.
- (vi) There should be demand for electricity in the area.

Many countries of the world have abundant resources of water. Many of them have used this resource for the generation of electricity. The countries like U.S.A., Russia, Japan, Germany, Canada, England, France, Italy, Poland, Brazil and India need a special mention in this regard. The U.S.A. alone is producing 31% hydroelectricity of the world, Brazil and Canada depend too much on hydro electricity.



A Dam in State of California (U.S.A.)

India is producing 1% hydroelectricity of the world. Hydro electricity in India constitute 37% of the total energy sources. It shows that hydro electricticity has special significance for a country like India. There is no shortage of water resources in India. These water resources are available in the form of rivers and streams. These can be divided into following categories :

- (i) Rivers and streams of Himalayas in North India.
- (ii) Rivers and Streams of South India.

The North Indian rivers i.e., Ganga, Brahmaputra and their tributaries due to

melting of snow flow throughout the year. They have a lot of capacity to generate electricity. These north Indian sources of water have more than 78% of the potential hydro power capacity of India. On the other hand the South Indian rivers are rainfed. These have only 21% of the total potential hydro power capacity of the country.

All the states of India except Goa produce hydro-electricity. The states of Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka, Maharashtra, Punjab, Tamilnadu, Odisha and Kerala have very good installed capacity to produce hydro-electricity. The hilly states like Uttaranchal and Himachal Pradesh also have good potential resources of hydro-electricity. There is need to develop the potential resources.

Nagarjuna Sagar Dam in Karnataka, Ganga Electric Grid system in Uttar Pradesh. Tata Hydro Electric Grid in Maharashtra, Hirakund in Odisha, Mandi and Pandoh projects in Himachal Pradesh and Pong Dam & Bhakhra Dam in Punjab etc. are some worth mentioning hydro electric projects of India.

The dams or projects which are established for the generation of hydro electricity are also known as 'Multipurpose projects.' These projects fulfil the following objectives :

- (i) Control floods.
- (ii) Control soil erosion.
- (iii) Generate electricity.
- (iv) Canals for irrigation.
- (v) Development of fisheries in the lake or reservoir.
- (vi) Development of tourism.

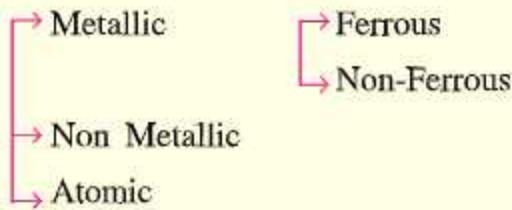
Other Energy Resources

In spite of hydro electricity the solar energy, wind energy, geo-thermal energy and atomic energy are also being used as energy resources. We use solar energy for heating the water, cooking or to keep our houses warm. The experiments of converting solar energy into electricity are also going on. The air in motion is called wind. We are also using wind energy to produce electricity. Geo thermal energy is also being used in different ways. Mainly it is used to heat our houses. In countries like Russia, Japan and New Zealand, electricity is being generated from the geothermal energy. Tides are also the energy resources which will be used in the future.

POINTS TO REMEMBER

Mineral and Power Resources

Minerals



Metallic Minerals – Iron, Manganese, Chromite, Nickel, Cobalt, Gold, Copper, Silver, Bauxite etc.

Non-Metallic Minerals – Mica, lime stone, Diamond, Gypsum etc.

Atomic Minerals – Uranium, Thorium, Beryllium, Lithium etc.

Energy Resources Old or conventional-coal, Petroleum, Natural Gas, Electricity etc.

New or Non-Conventional-Solar Energy, wind Energy, Tidal Energy, Geo-Thermal Energy etc.

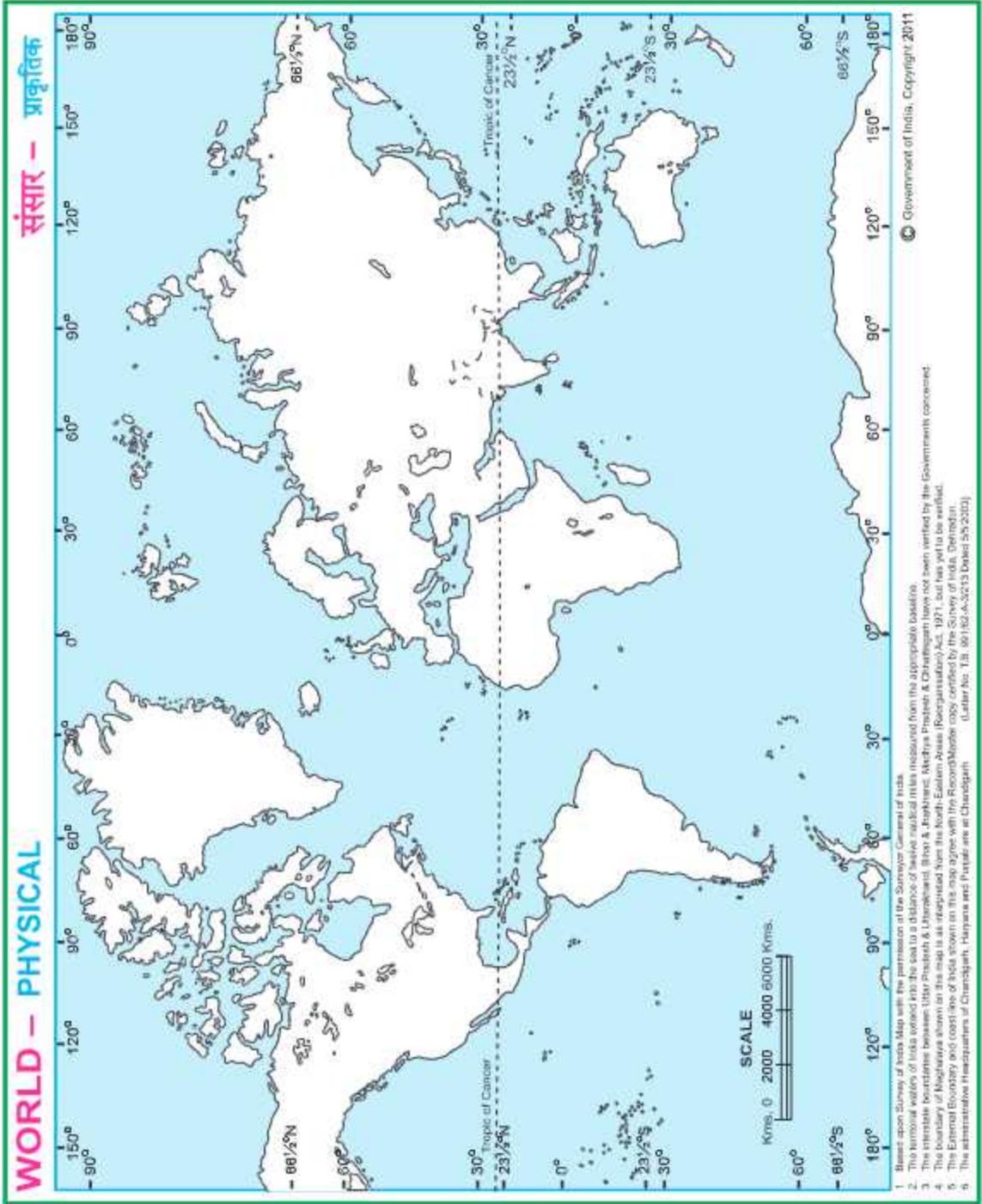


I. Answer the following questions in 01-15 words :

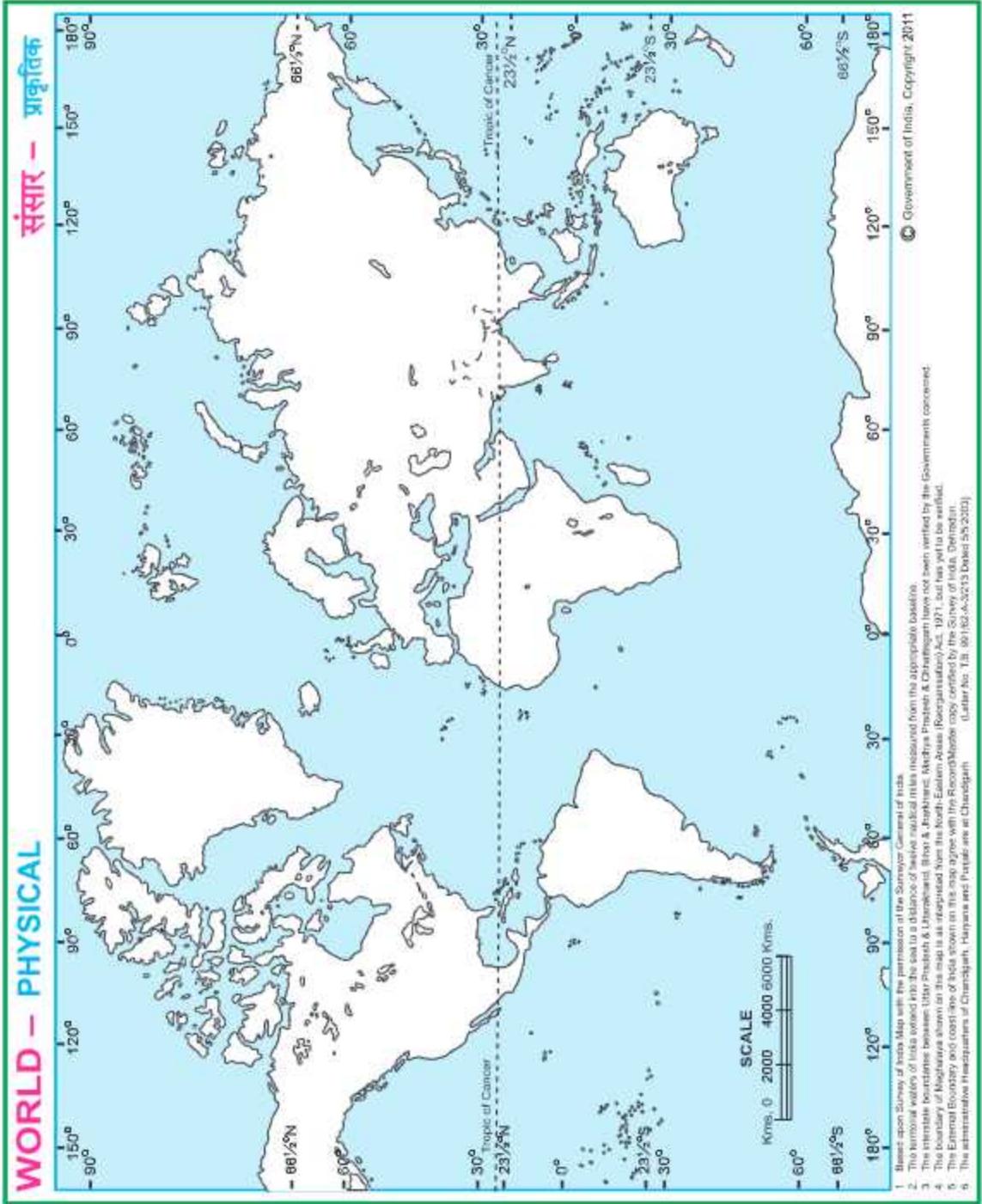
1. Write the definition of minerals resources.
2. Where do Iron-ore found in India ?
3. What are the uses of copper ?
4. Name the famous Gold mines in India.
5. How should we use the atomic minerals ?
6. What are the non-conventional sources of energy ?

II. Answer the following questions in 50-60 words :

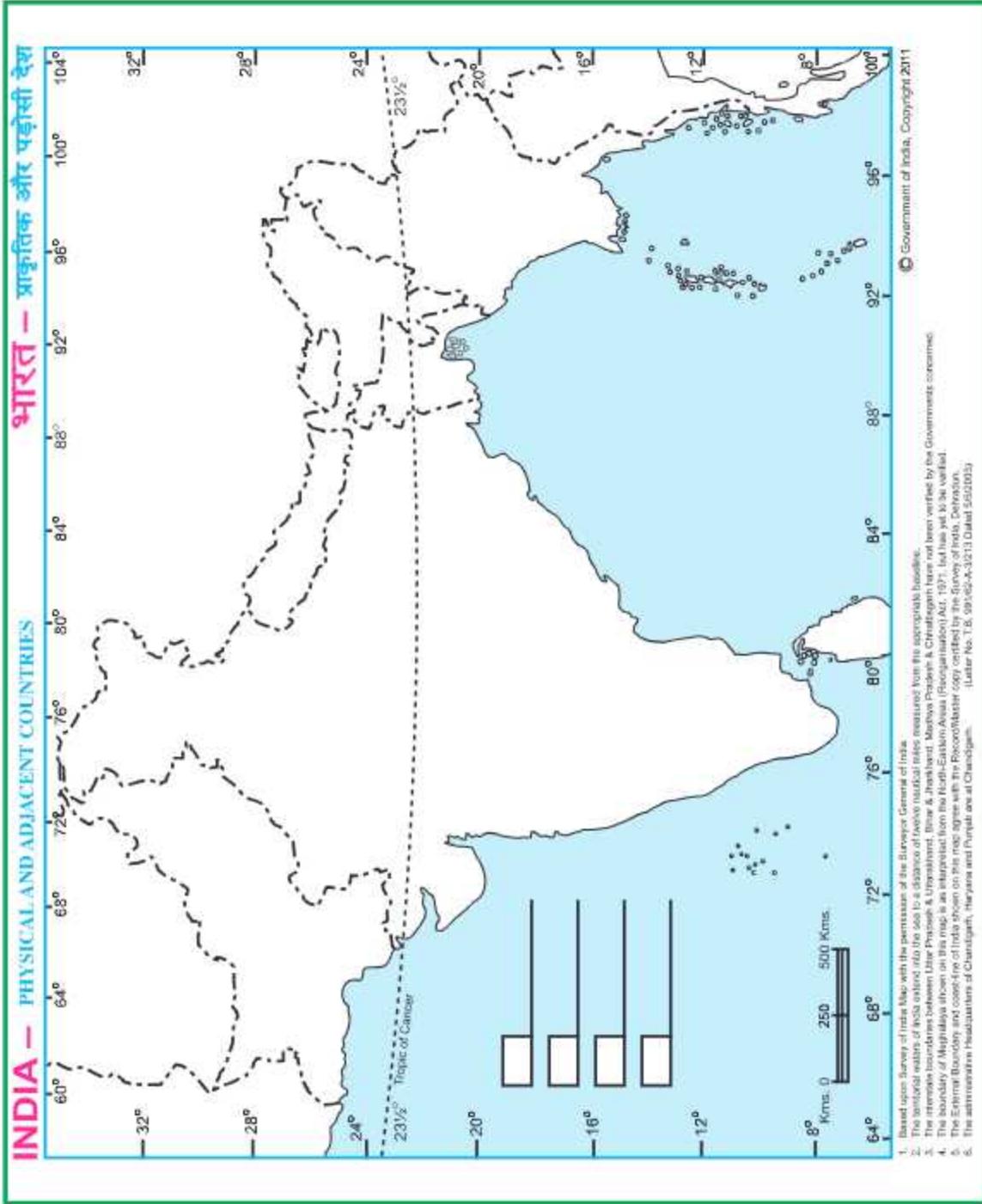
1. Write down a note on the importance of bauxite.
2. What is the importance of natural gas in our life and name the major areas in our country where it is found ?



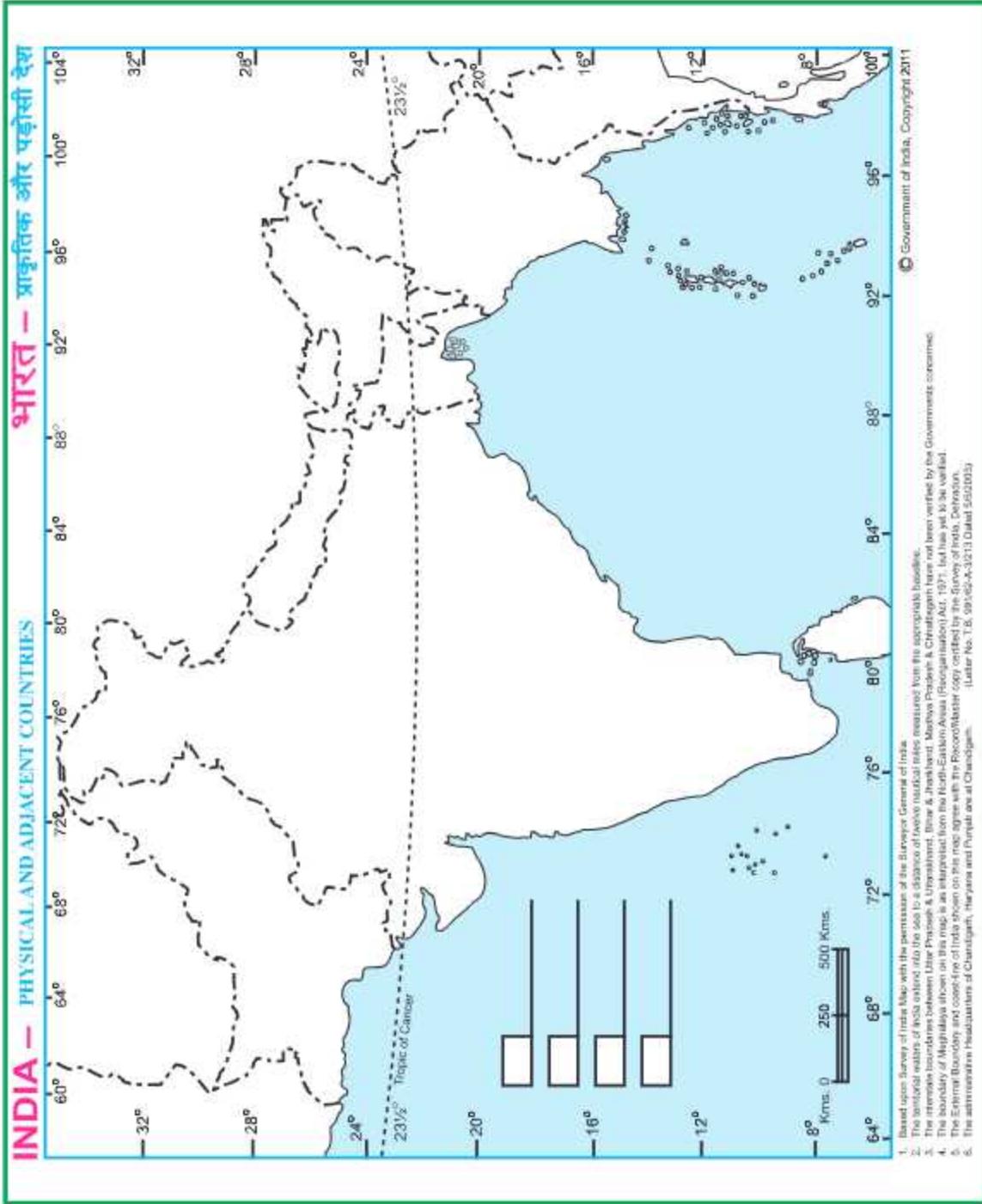
Name Class Roll No. Teacher Signature



Name Class Roll No. Teacher Signature



Name Class Roll No. Teacher Signature



Name Class Roll No. Teacher Signature



Agriculture is very old occupation of man. In the beginning man collected his food from the fruits, leaves of plants and hunting. As the time passed, the number of human beings went on increasing. Then the need to grow the crops for food was felt. This way the man started the occupation of agriculture. With the passage of time, man made improvements in methods of agriculture. Presently he uses machines for the purpose of agriculture.

The meaning of agriculture is not just to produce the crops rather its field is very vast. Agriculture means growing of crops, raising of livestock and running of industries based on agriculture. Dairy farming, poultry, honey bee keeping, pisci culture, gur making industry, flour mills, floriculture etc. all occupations are part of agriculture. Having extensive field, agriculture is influenced by many factors. Some of the important factors which affect the agriculture are given below :

1. Climate 2. Relief 3. Type of soil 4. Irrigation facilities 5. Methods of agriculture 6. Market facility 7. Means of transport, Banks and other facilities.

From the above mentioned factors, as many are favourable, more will be the development of agriculture. Due to the favourable climate for agriculture the state of Punjab, is ahead of all other states of India.

Types of Agriculture

It is not an easy task to divide the agriculture into different types because it does not depend on any single factor. There are many bases to divide the agriculture into various types. Agriculture can be divided on the basis of land use or methods of agriculture. It can also be divided on the bases of irrigation, social or economic factors. The types of agriculture on different bases are given as under :

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Permanent Agriculture | 2. Shifting Agriculture |
| 3. Dry Farming | 4. Wet Farming |
| 5. Intensive Farming | 6. Extensive Farming |
| 7. Mixed Farming | 8. Horticulture |

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 9. Private type of Agriculture | 10. Cooperative type of farming |
| 11. Collective type of farming | 12. Plantation Farming |
| 13. Subsistence Farming | 14. Commercial Farming |

1. Permanent Agriculture : This type of agriculture is performed by permanently staying at a place. The crops are grown continuously from the same piece of land. Manures or fertilisers are used to increase the fertility of the soil. Presently permanent type of agriculture is prevalent in most parts of the world. This type of agriculture is also known as stable agriculture.

2. Shifting Agriculture : In the hilly areas or open forests, tribal people clear the forests and practise agriculture for small period of time. When the land of one place loses its fertility, these people leave the place and start agriculture somewhere else. These people adopt shifting type of lifestyle. This type of agriculture is known as shifting agriculture or 'Jhooming Cultivation.' Still in many countries of the world this type of agriculture is practised.

3. Dry Farming : This type of agriculture is practised in the areas receiving less than 50 cm of annual rainfall. Mostly pulses, maize, oats etc. are grown. In the desert areas of the world including the state of Rajasthan dry farming is prevalent.

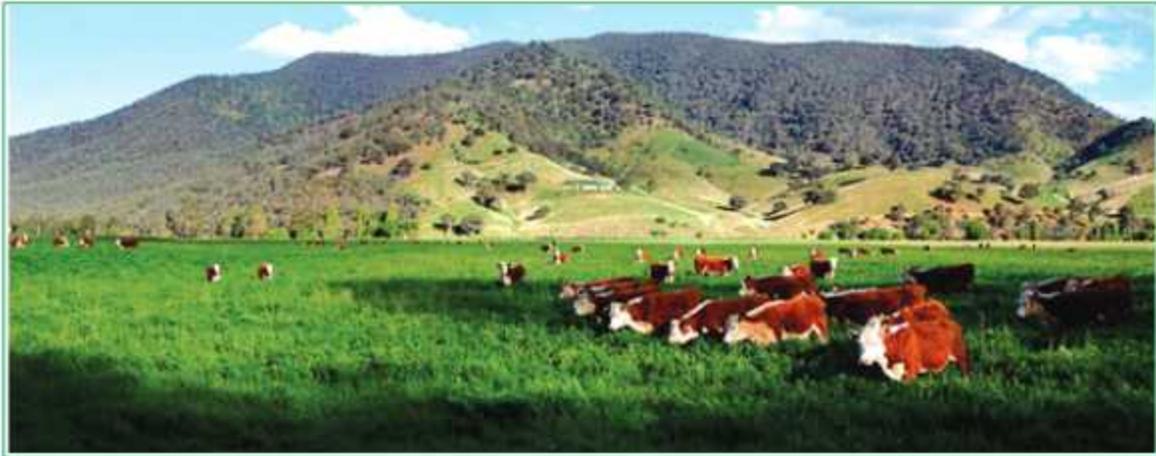
4. Wet Farming : This type of agriculture is carried out in the areas receiving 200 cm or more annual rainfall. There is no need of any irrigation facilities in such areas. South-East parts of Asia which receive heavy rainfall are famous for rice cultivation. West Bengal, Odisha and Southern areas of heavy rainfall also practice this type of agriculture.

5. Intensive Farming : When with the full use of fertilisers and irrigation facilities more yield is taken from a small piece of land then this type of agriculture is called Intensive agriculture. In the state of Punjab this type of agriculture is dominating.

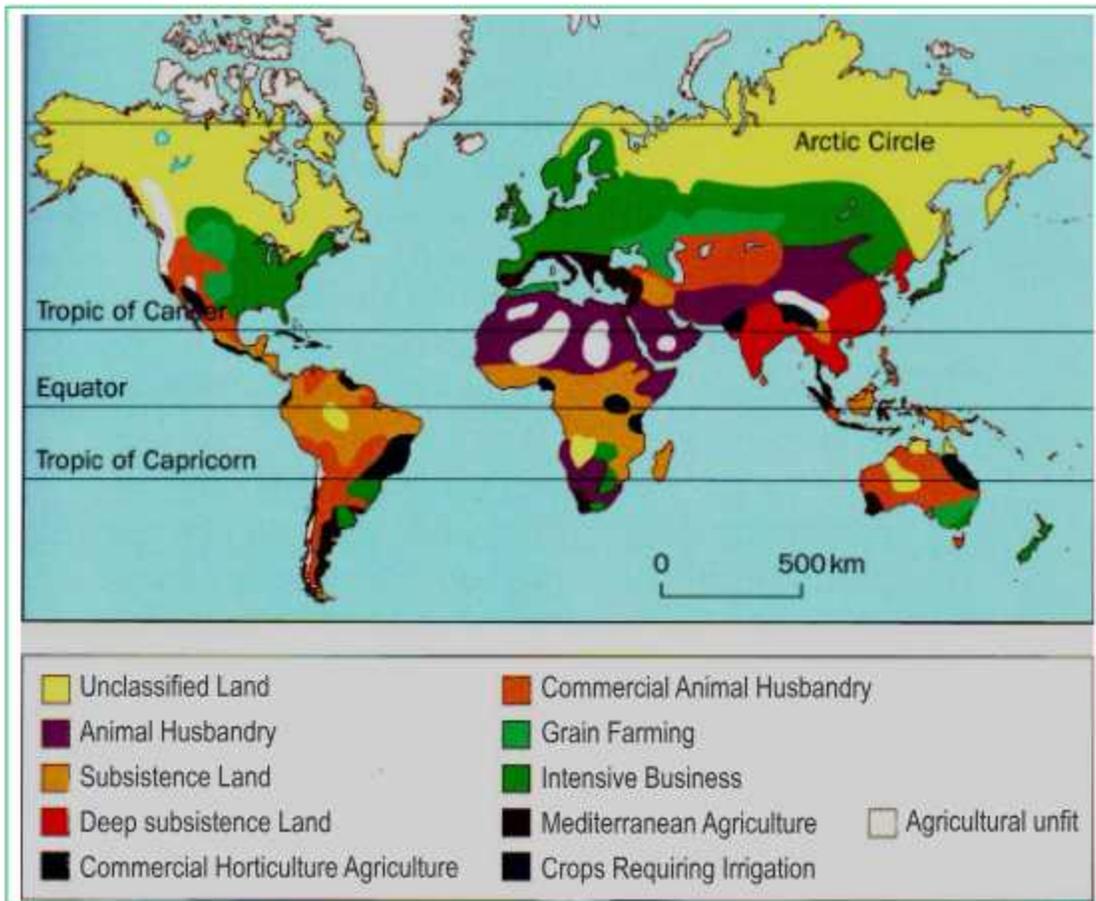
6. Extensive Farming : When the size of the land holdings is large, then the agricultural activities are performed with the help of machines. This type of Agriculture is called Extensive farming.

In the countries like U.S.A. where the size of the fields is very large, this type of agriculture is practised. In this type, yield per acre is less as compared to the intensive type of agriculture.

7. Mixed Farming : Along with growing of crops, fruits and vegetables are grown and the cattle are also reared in this type of agriculture. Honey bees and fish may also be kept. The farmer gets good income from mixed type of activities.



Cattle rearing is one of the secondary occupations of Agriculture



World : Agriculture types

8. Horticulture : In this type of agriculture, the fruits, vegetables, flowers and flower seeds are produced. Modern techniques of agriculture are used. Horticulture is proving very beneficial for the farmers.



A View of Horticulture

9. Private type of Agriculture : In this case the farmer himself is the owner of the land. The instruments, equipments, other infrastructure and fertilisers etc. being used on the land are all controlled by the farmer. The income from the land belongs to the farmer.

10. Cooperative type of farming : In this type of agriculture a cooperative organisation is formed by adopting the democratic procedure. All the farmer members cultivate their land. The crop is sold by the cooperative organisation. Only those decisions are taken which are favourable to all the members of the organisation. The profit from the cultivation of land is divided among the members according to their share of land. It is very beneficial especially for the small farmers. The Government of India is all along encouraging this type of agriculture.

11. Collective type of farming : This type of agriculture was popular in the erstwhile U.S.S.R. The land was owned by the government. Some part of the income from the agriculture went to the government in the form of tax. The remaining income distributed among the farmers who worked on the land.

12. Plantation Farming : This type of agriculture was started by the British in the 19th Century. In this type, the crop is planted like a garden and a large scale farming is undertaken. For example for tea, coffee, coconut, rubber etc. plantations are done. These gardens yield crops for many years. This type of farming is considered very economical.

13. Subsistence Farming : Small farmers who have small land holding cultivate their lands and grow the crops according to their social and economic needs. They use

the crops for their subsistence and do not sell in the market, therefore this type of agriculture is known as subsistence farming. If they sell some part of the produce, they use the money earned for the clothing or fulfil their small domestic needs.

14. Commercial Farming : In this type of agriculture, the farmers grow the crops on their lands by using machines and other sources on a very large scale. They earn a lot of money by selling their crops in the markets. This type of agriculture is chosen mainly to earn money. The countries of the world, having extensive areas, where the farmers have very large land holdings are known for this type of farming. The countries like U.S.A. and Canada practice commercial type of farming. The big farmers of India also practice this type of agriculture and earn a lot of money.

Major Crops

The crops grown in an area depend on many factors. Among these factors, the climate is the main deciding factor. Due to the variations in climate, different types of crops are grown in different parts of the world. For example apple crop requires cold and snowy type of climate whereas rice is the crop of hot and humid region. In our country, due to variations in climate and other agricultural factors, a lot of variations are found in the cultivation of crops. Various types of crops are grown in different areas. The crops can be of different types. We can categorise the crops as under :

MAJOR CROPS

Cereal Crops	Fibre Crops	Beverage Crops	Vegetable and Fruit Crops
Rice	Cotton	Tea	Apple
Wheat	Jute	Coffee	Orange
Maize	Hemp	Cocoa	Banana
Jowar			Mango
Bajra			Peach
Pulses			Vegetables
Oilseeds			

Cereal Crops

The population of the world is increasing day by day. It becomes very necessary to grow the food crops on a large scale to fulfil people's main necessity of food. For this purpose the agriculturally suitable countries of the world are trying to increase the production of food crops. In India also 75% of the total crops grown are cereal crops.

Some of the major cereal crops have been discussed in detail as under :

1. Rice : Rice is produced mostly in hot and humid climate countries. China, India, Bangladesh, Japan and other South-East countries of the world largely grow rice. China produces 36% of total world rice production and takes the lead. A large quantity of rice is grown in the valleys of river Yangtze-kiang in China. The Ganga Delta of Brahmaputra also produces a good quantity of rice. High yielding varieties of rice like 'Japonica' are also grown in Japan. In Indonesia too, rice is grown in the plains and on the hilly slopes. India ranks second in rice cultivation and stands next to China. India produces approximately 20% rice of the world.

Conditions required for the cultivation of Rice

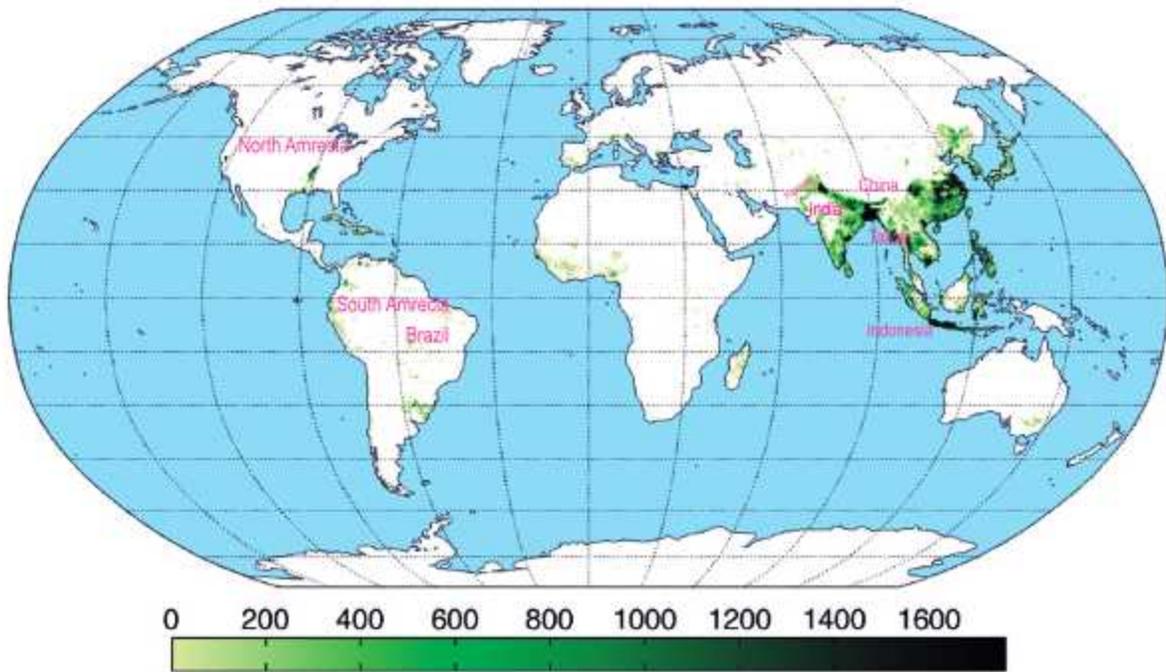
Temperature	: 20° – 30°C
Rainfall	: Average 100-200 cm or low rainfall areas
Soils	: Alluvial soil, Clayey soil, Loamy soil, Delta soil or Black soil with irrigation
Relief	: Should be levelled so that the water can made to stand in the field.
Labour	: A large number of labourers are required for the cultivation of rice especially at the time of rice plantation and harvesting.

Although the machinery is being used to a large extent, yet many activities are done by man. For growing of rice cheap and trained labour is required. Rice cultivation is also done on the hilly slopes by making terraces or steps. To grow rice, first of all nursery is grown. The field in which the rice is to be planted is prepared by ploughing, filling with water and levelling. This whole process is known 'pudding.' Then the nursery rice plants are planted in the puddled field. Rice requires water since its planation till sometimes before the harvesting. The weather should be dry at the time of crop harvest.

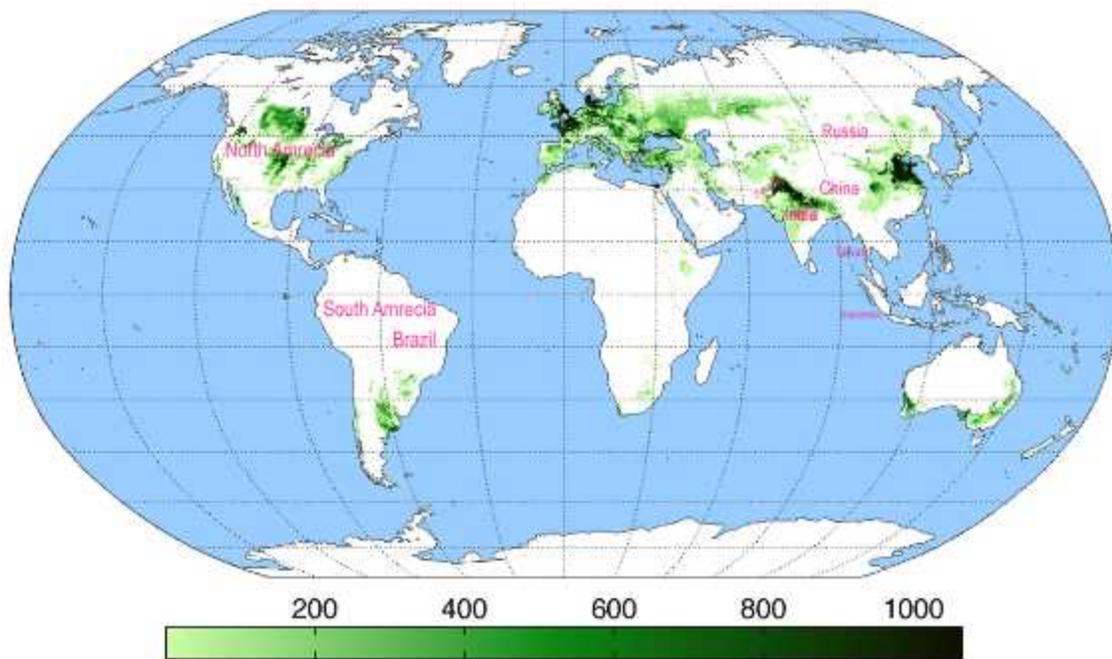


Labourers planting nursery rice plants

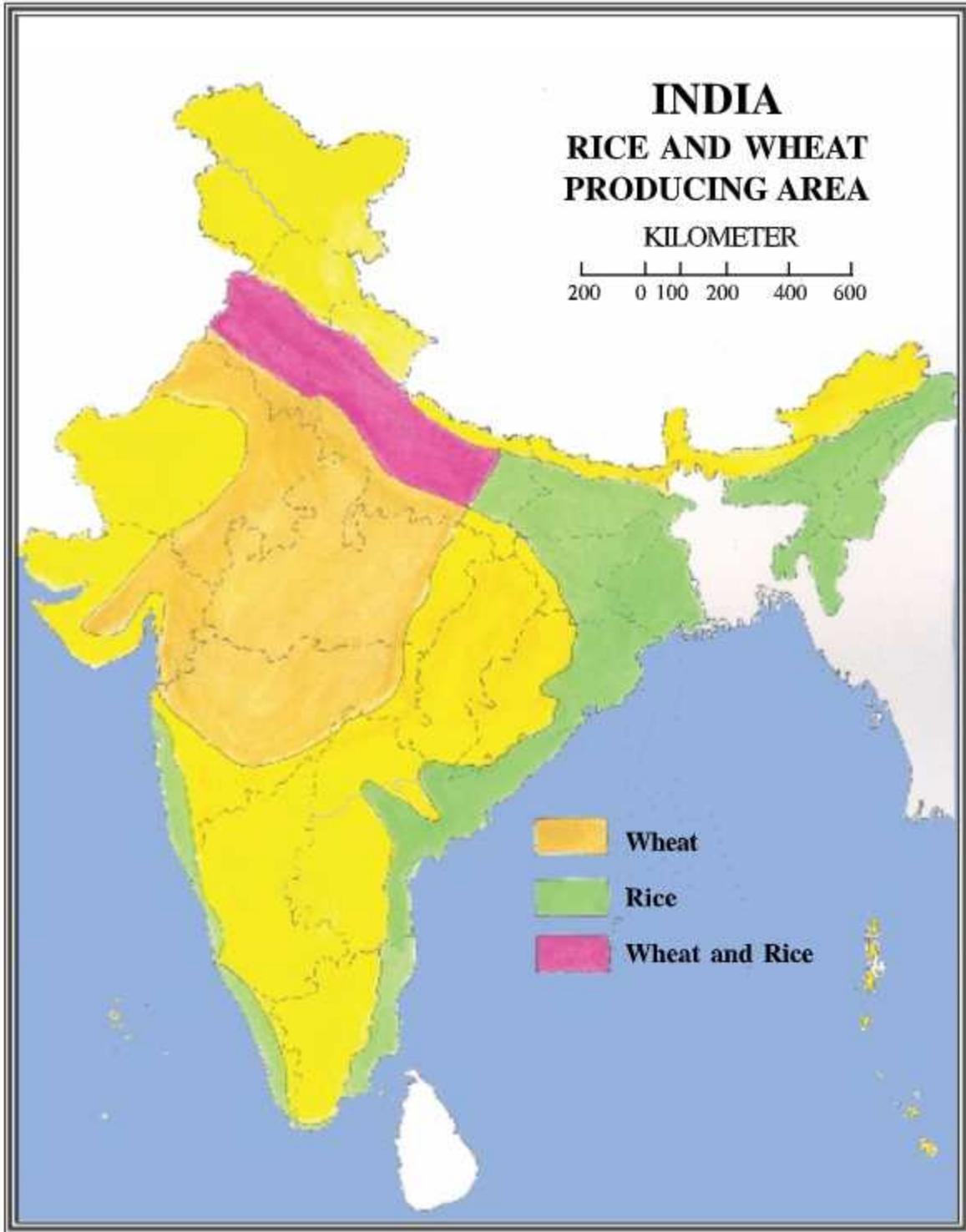
Areas of Rice Production : Rice is the crop of hot and humid countries of the world. It is very popular in Asia. The climate of Asia is highly suitable for growing rice. Because of high pressure of population the consumption of rice is also high. Rice, is considered the major kharif crop. in India and it is chiefly produced in the plains of Ganga-Brahmaputra, coastal areas and the heavy rainfall areas of South India. West Bengal, Bihar, Odisha, Punjab, Uttar Pradesh, Tamilnadu, Chhattisgarh, Andhra Pradesh and Haryana etc. states are very popular for growing rice.



Main Rice Producing Regions of World



Main Wheat Producing Regions of World



Per hectare yield of rice in Punjab is the highest in India and produces about 12.2% of the total rice production of the country, Punjab state ranks second after West Bengal. Amritsar and Ludhiana are important rice producing district of Punjab.

2. Wheat : Wheat is such a crop which is grown in many countries of the world. Its cultivation may take place in low lying areas to higher hilly slopes. People of the rich countries of the world consume more wheat as compared to rice. The wheat is considered as rich in protein, carbohydrates and vitamins. In the world there are two prevalent varieties ; winter Wheat and Spring wheat.

Conditions required for the cultivation of Wheat

Temperature	:	10° – 20°C
Rainfall	:	500-100 cm
Relief	:	levelled or with gentle slope
Soils	:	loamy, clayey, black or red soil
Seeds and Fertilisers	:	Good variety seeds and fertilizers are necessary to increase in the production
Labour	:	Labour is required at the time of sowing and harvesting seasons.

Wheat is normally sown in the months of November and December. It requires low temperature at the time of sowing and high temperature at the time of reaping the crop. It requires rainfall or irrigation time to time. At the time of ripening the crop requires hot and dry weather conditions.

Areas of Wheat Production

China, Russia, U.S.A., France, Canada, Germany etc. are main wheat producing countries of the world. In these countries due to less population and availability of more land, more wheat is produced by using the machines on a very large scale. Kansas, Dakota, Montana, Minnesota, Texas, Region around the Great Lakes (U.S.A.), Ontario and British Columbia (Canada) are important for wheat production.

India holds second position among the wheat producing countries of the world. From the northern parts to some states of south, wheat is produced in India. These states of India namely Uttar Pradesh, Punjab and Haryana produce more than 72% of country's total wheat production. Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh and Bihar states also produce wheat.

Almost all the districts of Punjab state produce wheat. Green Revolution in Punjab contributed a lot towards the production of wheat. With the use of good variety of seeds, fertilizers and irrigation facilities the production of wheat has increased manifold. Punjab's wheat contribution to the central pool is more than all other states of India.

3. Maize : The maize plant was originated in the U.S.A. It is a cereal crop in many countries of the world. In Europe, the production of maize started at the time of Columbus when he brought maize seeds from America. The maize is produced in many parts of Europe. Glucose, starch and alcohol is prepared from the maize. Vegetable oil is also made from this crop. Maize crop is also used as fodder for the animals.

Condition required for the cultivation of Maize

Temperature	: 18° – 27°C frost free weather conditions are required.
Rainfall	: 50 – 100 cm
Relief	: levelled or gentle slope
Soils :	: Alluvial soil, Red soil or in various other types of soils.

Maize is produced in the low rainfall areas. This crop does not require very good type of soil. Frost is very harmful for the crop. The crop has to be protected from birds and the wild animals.

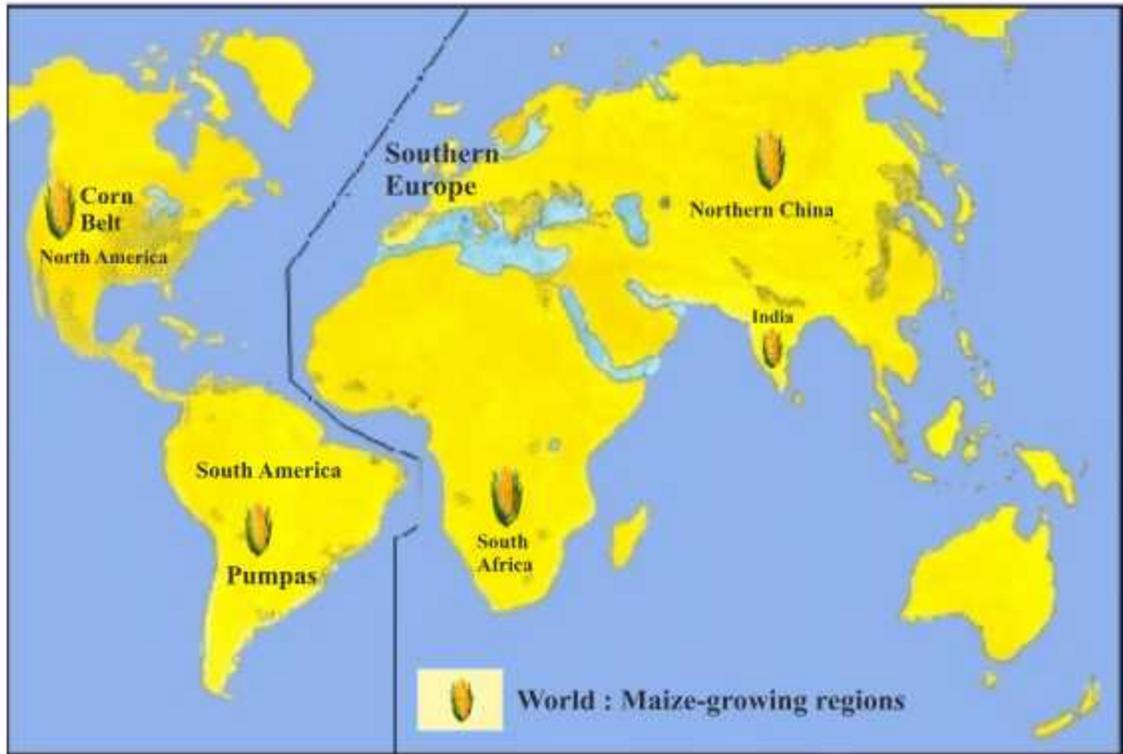
Maize Producing Areas

The countries like U.S.A., China and Brazil are the chief maize producing countries of the world. The U.S.A., alone produces 50% of the total world maize production and also exports to many other countries. Brazil and Argentina also produce as well as export maize. The ‘corn belt’ of the U.S.A. is world famous, where pigs, horses and cattle are fed on maize.

Many states of India produce maize. Madhya Pradesh, Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka and Rajasthan produce more than 50% of the total India’s maize production. Uttar Pradesh, Himachal Pradesh, Jammu & Kashmir, Maharashtra, Gujarat and Punjab are the other maize producing states. Mandla, Ujjain, Indore, Ratlam, Jabua (Madhya Pradesh), Kangra, Sirmour, Mandi, Chamba (Himachal Pradesh), Rupnagar, Amritsar, Hoshiarpur and Jalandhar (Punjab) districts are main maize producing areas. The area under maize in Punjab is declining continuously and it is being replaced by other crops. Maize is known as corn more popularly in India.

Cereal crops other than rice, wheat and maize are also grown in different parts of the world. The main among them are Oats, Millets (bajra), Jowar, Pulses and Oilseeds. Oats, Bajra and Jowar are eaten by the human beings as well as animals. The pulses form a major part of our food. The Oilseeds like Mustard, Soyabean, Sesame and Sunflower have a special importance in our life. Oils are used as food and fulfil our other needs. The cultivation of pulses and oilseeds bring a lot of income to the farmers.

Fibre Crops : Fibre is obtained mainly from two sources – animal or plants. In the category of animals sheep is the main such animal from which a large quantity of fibre is obtained. This fibre is used for making woollen clothing. Fibre is also obtained from different types of plants. Most of the fibre is obtained from cotton and jute plants.



The cotton is used as chief raw material in the Cotton Textile Industry. Sacks, carpets, ropes and cloth etc. are also prepared from the jute. In this part of the lesson we will study about fibre crops cotton and jute.

1. Cotton : Cotton is an important fibre crop which is being used more than any other fibre in the textile industry. The cloth made of cotton is light in weight and of best quality. On the the basis of length of the staple, the cotton can be categorised into three categories i.e. Long staple cotton, Medium staple cotton and Short staple cotton. 'The long staple cotton is costly and the best in quality.

Condition required for the cultivation of Cotton :

Temperature : 20° – 30°C - minimum 200 frost free days.

Rainfall : 50 – 100 cm

Relief : levelled or gentle slope

Soil : Black soil or Alluvial soil. Fertilizers are also required.

Labour : Cheep and skilled labour for picking of cotton is required.

In the plains cotton crop is sown in the month of April and May and is collected before the start of frost in month of December. In the southern parts of India, cotton crop is cultivated from October to April as thee is no possibility of cold of forst conditions. Good quality seeds and insecticides are required to save the cotton crop from diseases and insects. For picking of cotton flowers sheap and skilled labourers especially the women labourers are required.



Women Plucking Cotton flowers

Regions of Cotton Production

The U.S.A., erstwhile U.S.S.R. countries, China, Mexico, Egypt, Sudan, India and Pakistan etc. are major cotton producing countries. After the U.S.A. and China India ranks third in cotton production in the world. The cotton production in the U.S.A. is very old, but slowly-slowly production is declining. Russia and Uzbekistan also produce cotton in large quantities. In China the production and consumption both are very high. Long staple cotton of Egypt is world famous. Punjab and Sind states of Pakistan are famous for cotton production.

In India the states with black soil lead in cotton production. With the use of good quality seeds and fertilizers long staple cotton is being produced. Among the cotton producing states. Maharashtra, Gujarat and Andhra Pradesh produce more than 60% of India's total cotton production. Mainly black soil is found in these states which is highly suitable for cotton growing. Punjab and Haryana states together produce about 25% of country's cotton production. Nanded, Amravati, Wardha, Jalgaon, (Maharashtra), Surendernagar, Vadodara, Ahmedabad (Gujarat), Guntur, Parkasam (Andhra Pradesh), Bathinda, Faridkot, Ferozepur & Sangrur (Punjab) are important cotton producing districts of the country. In Punjab, B.T. cotton seed variety of cotton is giving good results. Cotton is known as 'white gold' in Malwa region of Punjab. The cities like Mumbai, Ahmedabad, Kanpur, Nagpur, Sholapur, Chennai, Delhi and Kolkata are known for textile industries.

2. Jute : Jute is reed like tall plant which grows upto 10-12 feet height. Jute is coarse but soft fibre. Jute has no competition with cotton as the uses of both the plant fibres are different. Jute is used for making sacks, ropes, carpets etc. but with the coming of plastics and synthetic fibres in the market, jute products are at risk.

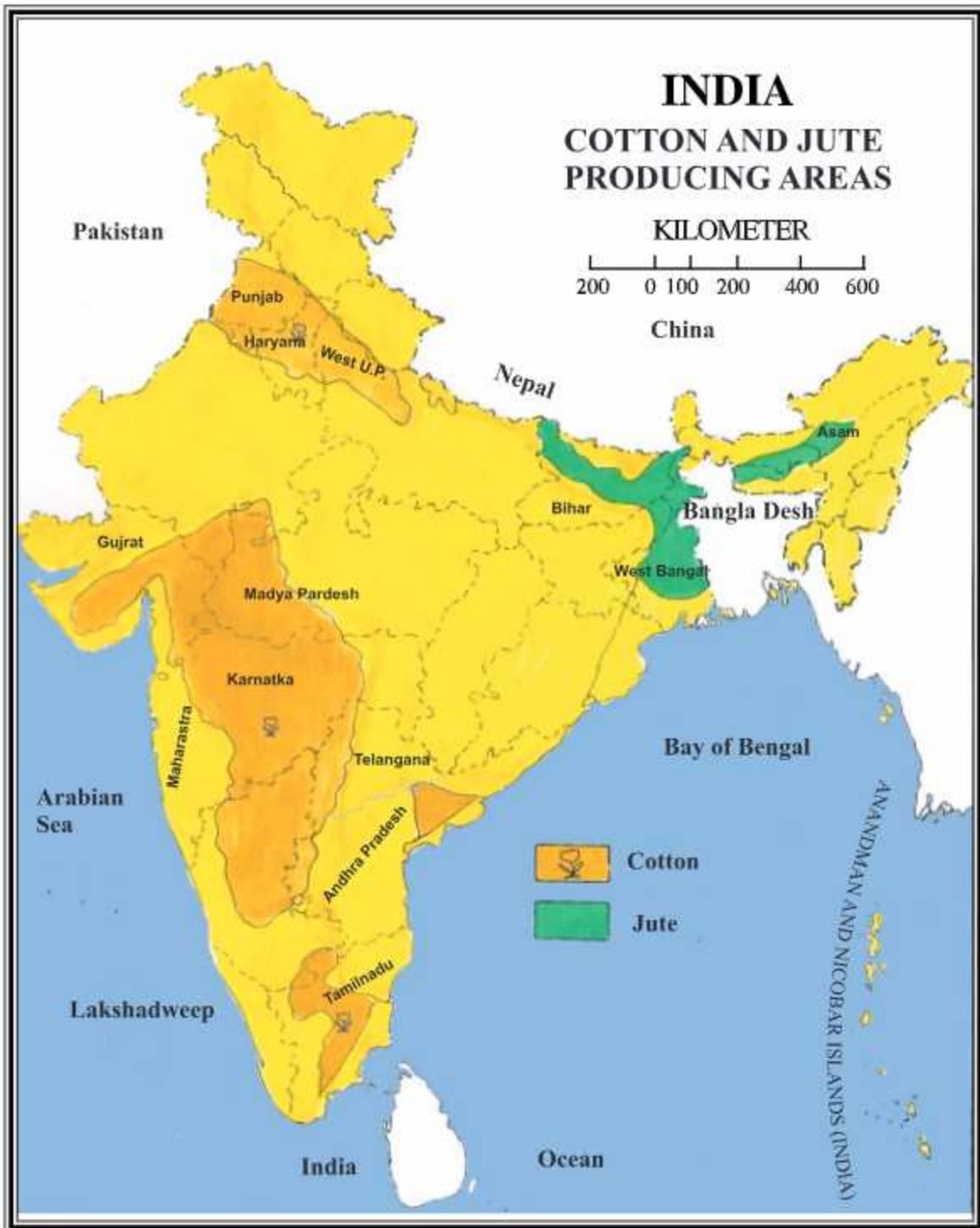
Condition required for growing of Jute :

Temperature	: 24° – 35°C
Rainfall	: 120 – 150 cm 80-90% relative humidity
Relief	: levelled land
Soils :	: Alluvial soil, Clayey Soil and Loamy Soil
Labour	: Labourers in large number are required

Normally jute is sown in the month of February and cut in the month of October. Some short duration jute varieties are also being grown. After cutting of the jute crop, it is kept under stagnant water in small bundles for 2-3 weeks. When the fibre becomes soft and ready for removal then the bundles are taken out of the water and dried. After that the fibre is separated from the jute plants and put to various uses after cleaning.

Regions of Jute Production

China, India, Bangladesh, Thailand and Brazil are main jute producing countries of the world. Hot and humid type of climate is highly suitable for jute production. India had Bangladesh are the leading countries in jute production, its cultivation is done on a large scale in the delta of Ganga and Brahmaputra rivers. Four states of India namely West Bengal, Bihar, Assam, and Orissa produce about 99% of India's total jute production. Some jute is also grown in the states like Uttar Pradesh, Maharashtra and Kerala. Nadia, Murshidabad, 24 pargana, Jalpaiguri, Hughly (West Bengal), Purnia, Katihar, Darbhanga (Bihar), Goalpara, Daring and Sibsagar (Assam)



are important jute producing regions of the country. All the conditions required for jute growing are favourable in West Bengal. West Bengal alone produces country's 80% jute and many jute mills are also located here.

Beverage Crops

Beverage crops mainly include tea, coffee and cocoa. In today's world beverage crops are very significant. After we get up in the morning and before we start our daily chores, a cup of tea or coffee has a special importance almost for all of us. Because of the presence of stimulating elements in these crops, these produce stimulation or excitement in our body. These may be used in form of hot in cold and cold in hot weather conditions eg. hot or cold coffee etc. Here we will study about two beverage crops i.e., tea and coffee in detail.

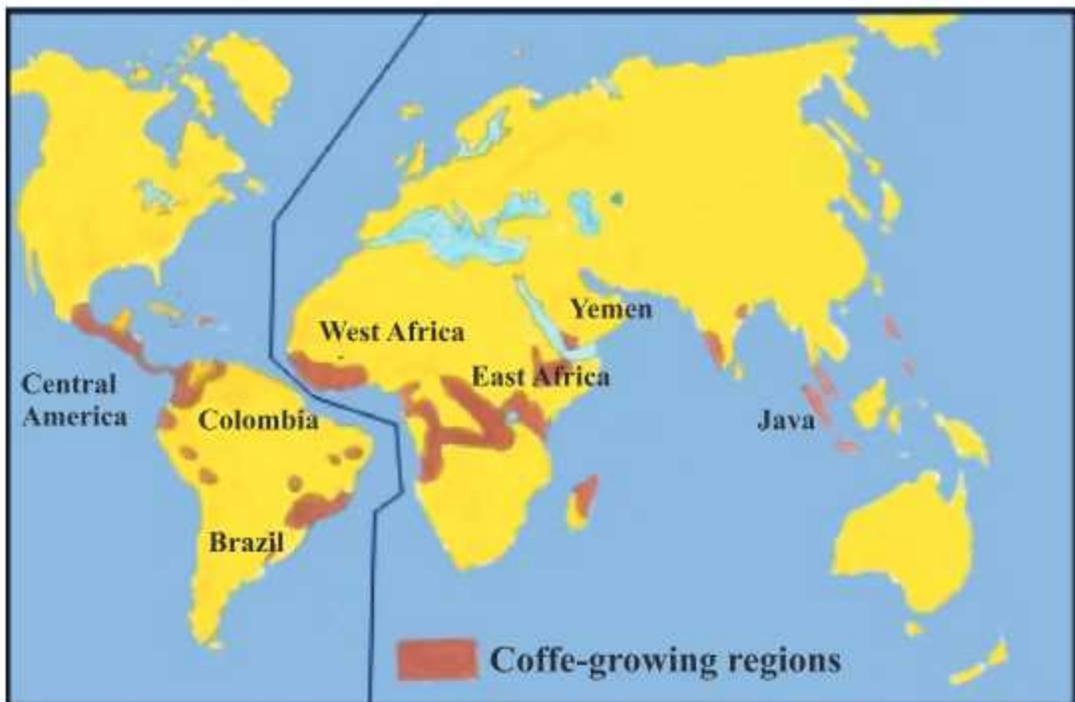
1. Tea : Tea plant is like a bush. Tea is obtained from its leaves. It is assumed that drinking of tea started in China in the sixth century and since then it is being taken in China and Japan. Great Britain and other European countries also started drinking tea by the seventeenth century and it was considered as fun and enjoyment by the rich people. In today's world, the tea has become a common drink. 'Black tea' and 'Green Tea' are important varieties of tea.



Women Collecting tea leaves

Condition required for growing of Jute :

Temperature	: 20° – 30°C
Rainfall	: 150 – 300 cm
Relief	: Slopy Land
Soils	: Loamy Soil, Forest Soil which is rich in iron and humus.
Labour	: Labourers in large number.
Market	: Demand for tea should be there.



Tea plants are planted on the cleared slopes. Use of fertilizers becomes necessary for the proper development of the plants. The rainfall should be distributed uniformly throughout the year. The rainwater should also not stand in the roots of the plants. Tea plant needs pruning for its proper growth.

Tea Producing Areas :

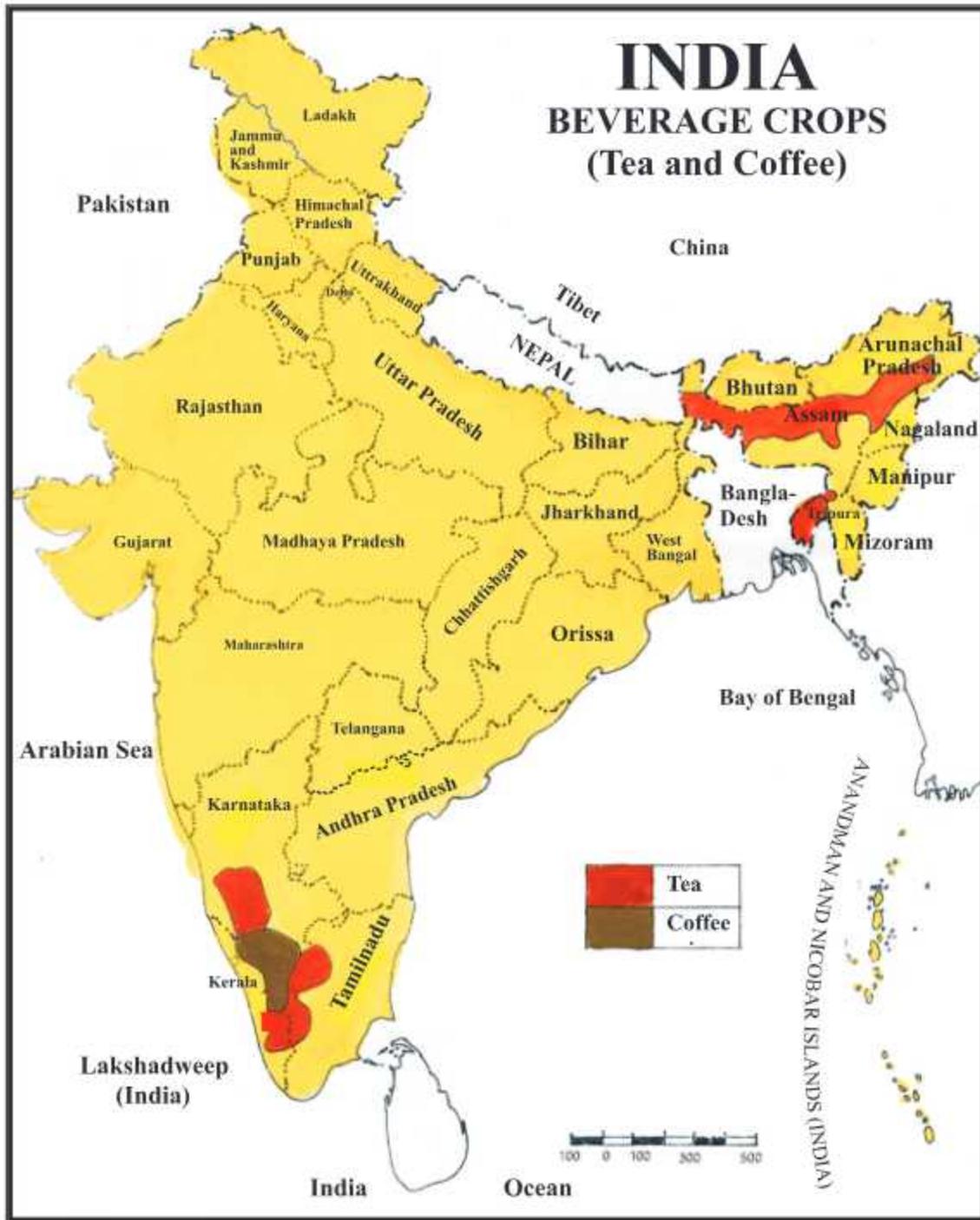
China, India, Japan, Sri Lanka, Taiwan, Indonesia and Bangladesh are the chief tea producing countries of the world. China has been the largest producer of tea for very long time but at present Sri Lanka is producing good quality of tea. Sri Lanka occupies third place in the world in tea production. Japan produces tea for its own requirements. The Oolong tea of Taiwan is famous for its taste. In Indonesia tea is produced on the slopes of volcanic hills in western Java. This tea is exported to Netherlands. Bangladesh also produces approximately 2% of the total world tea production.

India at present is the largest producer of tea. The consumption of tea in India is also the biggest in the world. Assam, West Bengal, Tamilnadu, Kerala, Tripura, Karnataka etc. are the main tea producing states of India. Assam state alone produces 51% of the total India's tea production. The Brahmaputra and Surma valleys of Assam are famous for tea production. Dibrugarh, Lakhimpur, Sibsagar, Daring, Nagaon, Goalpara and Kachhar are main tea producing districts of Assam. West Bengal produces 22% of the total India's tea production. Darjeeling, Jalpaiguri and Koch Bihar districts of West Bengal which are adjoining to Assam produce a good quantity of tea. In Tamilnadu tea is produced on Nilgiri and Annamalai hills. Kottayam, Kollam, Thiruvananthapuram (Kerala), Hassan, Chickmagalur (Karnataka) are the other important tea producing districts of India. India exports tea to Russia, U.K., U.S.A., Germany, Australia, Iran, Iraq and many other countries of the world. In the year 2003-04 India earned 1637 crores of rupees by exporting tea.

2. Coffee : Coffee is also a beverage crop like tea. Africa is considered as its place of origin. It started from Ephiopia, one of the African countries. It was taken to Saudi Arabia from Ethiopia. Coffee is costlier than tea in price. Coffee powder is prepared after the drying, roasting and grinding of coffee seeds. The coffee contains 'Caffeine' - an intoxicant which stimulates our body. The coffee is used in both i.e. the cold as well as the hot countries. 'Arabica' 'Robusta' and 'Liberica' varieties of coffee are considered very important.



The Coffee Seeds are being dried



Condition required for the Plantation of Coffee :

Temperature	: 15° – 28°C
Rainfall	: 100 – 200 cm
Relief	: Hilly or slopy Land
Soils :	: Loamy or soils rich in organic matter are required.
Labour	: Skilled Labourers are required.

Coffee saplings are grown in a nursery. After 6 to 9 months these plants are planted in the field prepared for the purpose. These plants start bearing fruit after 3 or 4 years. Once planted, these plants continue to bear fruit for 30 years if the care be taken. The coffee plants also require fertilisers, pruning and irrigation from time to time. How and sunny weather is required at the time of germination of plants and ripening of seeds. The height of coffee plant is kept upto 8 feet.

Coffee Producing Areas

Brazil, Columbia, Indonesia, Mexico, Ethiopia and India etc. produce coffee in the world. Brazil alone produces about 25% of the total world coffee production. Factors like climate and soils are very favourable for production of coffee in Brazil. Brazil exports a large quantity of coffee. Columbia is the second country of South America after Brazil which produces about 15% of the total world coffee. The taste and flavour of columbian coffee is better than that of Brazilian coffee. Indonesia, Mexico, Ethiopia and countries of central America also produce much coffee.

India produces only 2.5% of the total world coffee. Karnataka, Kerala, Tamilnadu and Andhra Pradesh states produce coffee in the country. Karnataka alone produces 70% of the total India's coffee. Kodagu, Chikmagalur, Shimoga, Hassan, Mysore (Karnataka), Mallaparam, Kollam, Kunoore (Kerala), Nilgiri, Madurai, Salem and Coimbatore (Tamilnadu) districts of India are famous for coffee production. Though India lags behind in coffee production yet it exports coffee to U.K., U.S.A. Russia, Australia and Iraq.

Development of Agriculture

Man has been working for the development of agriculture since the time he started the occupation. It has been his aim to increase the production by using the new seeds and developing the new methods of cultivation. Otherwise also, it has become necessary to develop the agriculture to fulfil the agriculture needs of continuously increasing population. Farmer of today cultivates his fields not only for subsistence but to sell the crops in the market and fulfil his various needs. To sell the crop in the market and earn good profit out of it is the necessity and aim of the now a days farmer.

A lot of variations are found in the levels of development of agriculture in different parts of the world. Some countries are agriculturally advanced whereas some are lagging behind. In many parts of Africa, agriculture is still very far behind whereas in the country like the U.S.A., in North America, agriculture is considered a good income generating occupation. In this part of the lesson we will focus on the agriculture of U.S.A. and Punjab State of India.

Agriculture in the U.S.A., – A Glance

Agriculturally, U.S.A. is a developed country. About 3% of the total population is engaged in agriculture. The main reason behind this is that all the activities of agriculture are carried on by machines and not by men. The other people work in industries or engaged in service sector. Agricultural activities are carried on about 20% part of the land. The main agricultural areas include North-West, North-East, interior plains and coastal plains of the country. Different types of crops are grown in different parts the country.



U.S.A. : Use of machines on a large scale

The farmers of U.S.A. have large land holding as compared to that of India. The farm size is very big. An average farm size in U.S.A. is 700 acres. Due to large size of the fields, extensive type of agriculture is practised. Machines are used at a very large scale. It is almost impossible to work in farms without machines. In a farm, only one type of crop is cultivated. From the sowing of crop to the taking of the crop to markets or stores, every work is done with the help of machines. Helicopters and aeroplanes are also used for the agricultural activities. The farmer of U.S.A. decides about the crop by taking into consideration of climate, type of soil, irrigation facilities etc. Insecticides and pesticides are properly utilized. The farmer of U.S.A. practise agriculture like a businessman and not like a mere farmer.

Agricultural in Punjab (India) – A Glance

Punjab in comparison to other states of India, is much advanced in agriculture. The agricultural sector contributes 35% of the total income of the country. About 58% population of the state is engaged in agriculture. The soils here are fertile in nature. To maintain the fertility of the soils, the farmer also uses fertilisers. The farmers of Punjab do not have too much of land. Land holding mostly range between 5 to 25 acres. Some farmers possess even less land. Six percent farmers of the state have more than 25 acres of land. The farmer grows, different types of crops in his fields. The variations in crops mainly depend on climate, size of land holding, type of soil, irrigation facilities and requirements of the farmer. The farmer of Punjab now uses refined



Tractors and Harvesters are used in the farms of Punjab

and high yielding variety seeds. According to the size of the land holding the farmer uses tractor or combine harvester.

Almost all the net sown area comes under irrigation. The farmer of Punjab also uses insecticides and pesticides at a large scale to get more production. Though the farmer of Punjab uses the machines, even then the contribution of labourers is too much. This we can estimate from the number of people working in the agricultural sector. In U.S.A. only 3% of population is engaged in agriculture whereas in Punjab 58% people are working in the agriculture sector. The farmer of Punjab (except a few big farmers) does not practise the agriculture like a businessman. He sows a number of crops in his fields. Two crops are taken at the same time. The agriculture of Punjab is intensive type of agriculture. Therefore the yield per acre is more than that of the U.S.A.

POINTS TO REMEMBER

Agriculture : A very important and old occupation.

Definition : Agriculture means growing of crops, raising of livestock and running the industries based on agriculture.

Factors effecting Agriculture :

- climate
- relief
- soil
- Irrigation facilities
- Methods of agriculture
- Market Facilities
- Means of Transport, Banks and other facilities

Types of Agriculture :

- Permanent type of agriculture
- Shifting
- Dry Farming
- Wet/Humid farming
- Intensive type of agriculture
- Extensive
- Mixed farming
- Floriculture
- Private type of Agriculture
- Cooperative
- Collective
- Plantation Agriculture
- Subsistence type of agriculture
- Commercial

Major Crops

- Cereal Crops - Rice, wheat, maize, Jowar, Bajra, Pulses, Oil seeds
- Fibre Crops - Cotton, Jute, Hemp
- Beverage Crops - Tea, Coffee, Cocoa
- Vegetable & Fruit crops - Apple, Orange, Banana, Mango, Peach, Vegetables

Geographical conditions required for cultivation of different crops :

	Rice	Wheat	Maize	Cotton	Jute	Tea	Coffee
Temp.	20°-30°C	10°-20°C	18°-27°C	20°-30°C	24°-35°C	20°-30°C	15°-28°C
Rainfall	100-200cm	50-100cm	50-100cm	50-100cm	120-150cm	150-300cm	100-200cm
Relief	Levelled	Levelled or Slope	Levelled or Simple slope	Levelled or Simple slope	Levelled	Slope	Slope
Soils	Alluvial Clayey loam	loam Clayey Red	Alluvial Red	Black or Alluvial	Alluvial Clayey loam	Loam Forest Soil	Loam or Rich in humus
Labour	Required	Required	–	Trained Labour	Required	Trained Labour	Skilled Labour
Major Crop Producing Countries	China, India, Bangladesh, Japan and other South East, Countries.	China, U.S.A., Russia, France, Canada, Germany.	U.S.A., China, Brazil, Egypt,	U.S.A., East while USSR, China, Mexico, Sudan	China, India, Bangladesh, Thailand, Brazil, Indonesia	China, India, Japan, Sri Lanka, Taiwan, Bangladesh	Brazil, Columbia, Indonesia, Mexico, Ethiopia
Major Crop producing State of India	West Bengal, Bihar, Orissa	Uttar Pradesh, Punjab, Haryana	Madhya P., Andhra P., Karnataka.	Maharashtra, Gujarat, Andhra Pradesh, Punjab, Haryana	West Bengal, Bihar, Assam, Orissa, Uttar Pradesh	Assam, West Bengal, Tamilnadu, Kerala, Tripura,	Karnataka, Kerala, Tamilnadu, Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka.

Development of Agriculture :

U.S.A. : Large size of land holdings, extensive type of agriculture, full use of machines. The farmer produces the crops like a businessman. Yield per acre is less.

Punjab : Small size of land holdings, intensive type of agriculture, less use of machines. The farmer produces the crops for his own needs as well as for the market. Yield per acre is high.



I. Answer the following questions in 1-15 words :

1. What do you understand by agriculture ?
2. Which factors affect the agriculture ?
3. Write the name of the cereal crops.
4. What is puddling ?
5. What products are prepared from maize ?
6. How many tyupes of cotton are there on the basis of the length of its staple?
7. Which are the things that can be made from the jute ?
8. How does the tea plant look like ?
9. Write the names of three types of coffee.

II. Answer the following questions in 50-60 words :

1. After writing the types of agriculture, differentiate between Intensive and Extensive
2. Which are the main rice producing areas ?
3. Write a note on cotton production in Punjab.
4. Write about protection of tea and coffee plants.
5. Write a note on the uses of machines in agricultural operations in U.S.A.

III. In the map of India show two places for the each where the following crops are produced :

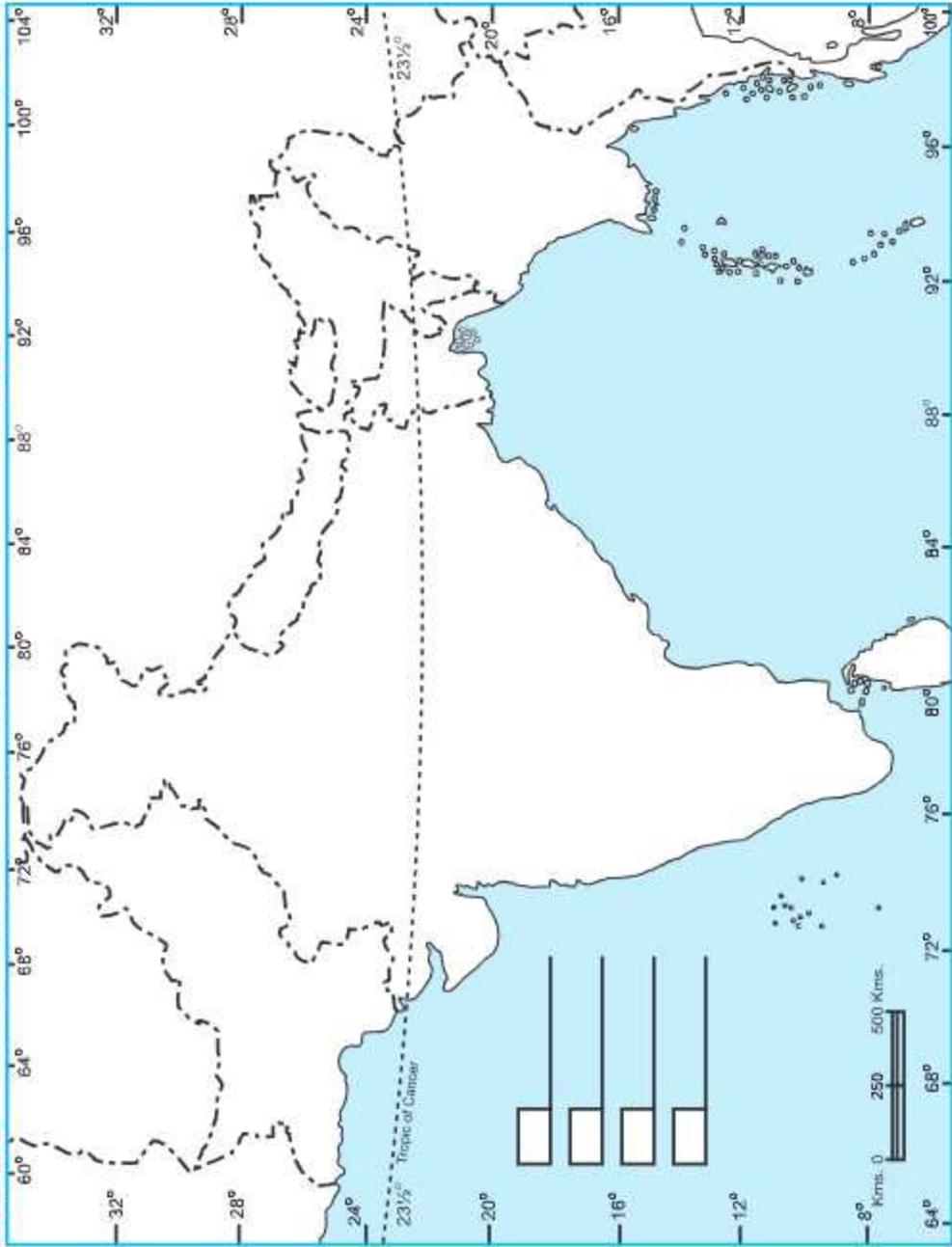
- (1) Tea (2) Wheat (3) Rice (4) Cotton
(5) Jute

IV. Activity :

Name three each of Kharif and Rabi crops produced in your region and mention geographical conditions needed for production of each crop.



INDIA – PHYSICAL AND ADJACENT COUNTRIES **भारत – प्राकृतिक और पड़ोसी देश**



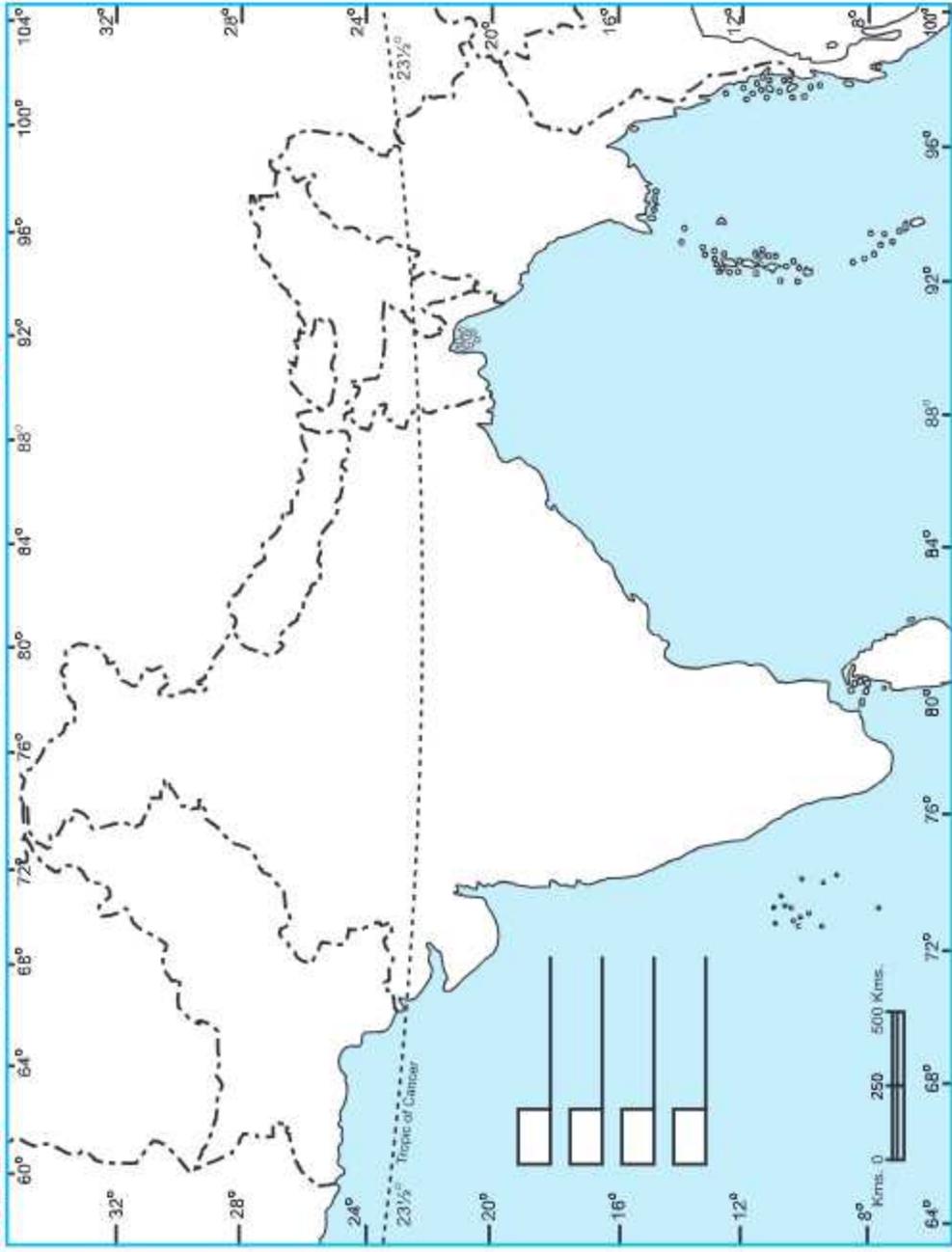
1. Based upon Survey of India Map with the permission of the Surveyor General of India.
2. The territorial waters of India extend into the sea to a distance of twelve nautical miles measured from the appropriate baselines.
3. The interstate boundaries between Uttar Pradesh & Uttarakhand, Bihar & Jharkhand, Madhya Pradesh & Chhattisgarh have not been verified by the Government's commission.
4. The boundary of Meghalaya shown on this map is as interpolated from the North-Eastern Area (photogrammetric) Act, 1977, but has yet to be verified.
5. The External Boundary and coastal line of India shown on this map agree with the Photogrammetric copy certified by the Survey of India, Dehra Dun. (Letter No. T.E. 90152-A-3013 Dated 05/02/03)
6. The administrative Headquarters of Chandigarh, Bhopal and Purpal are at Chandigarh.

© Government of India, Copyright 2011

Name Class Roll No. Teacher Signature

भारत - प्राकृतिक और पड़ोसी देश

INDIA - PHYSICAL AND ADJACENT COUNTRIES

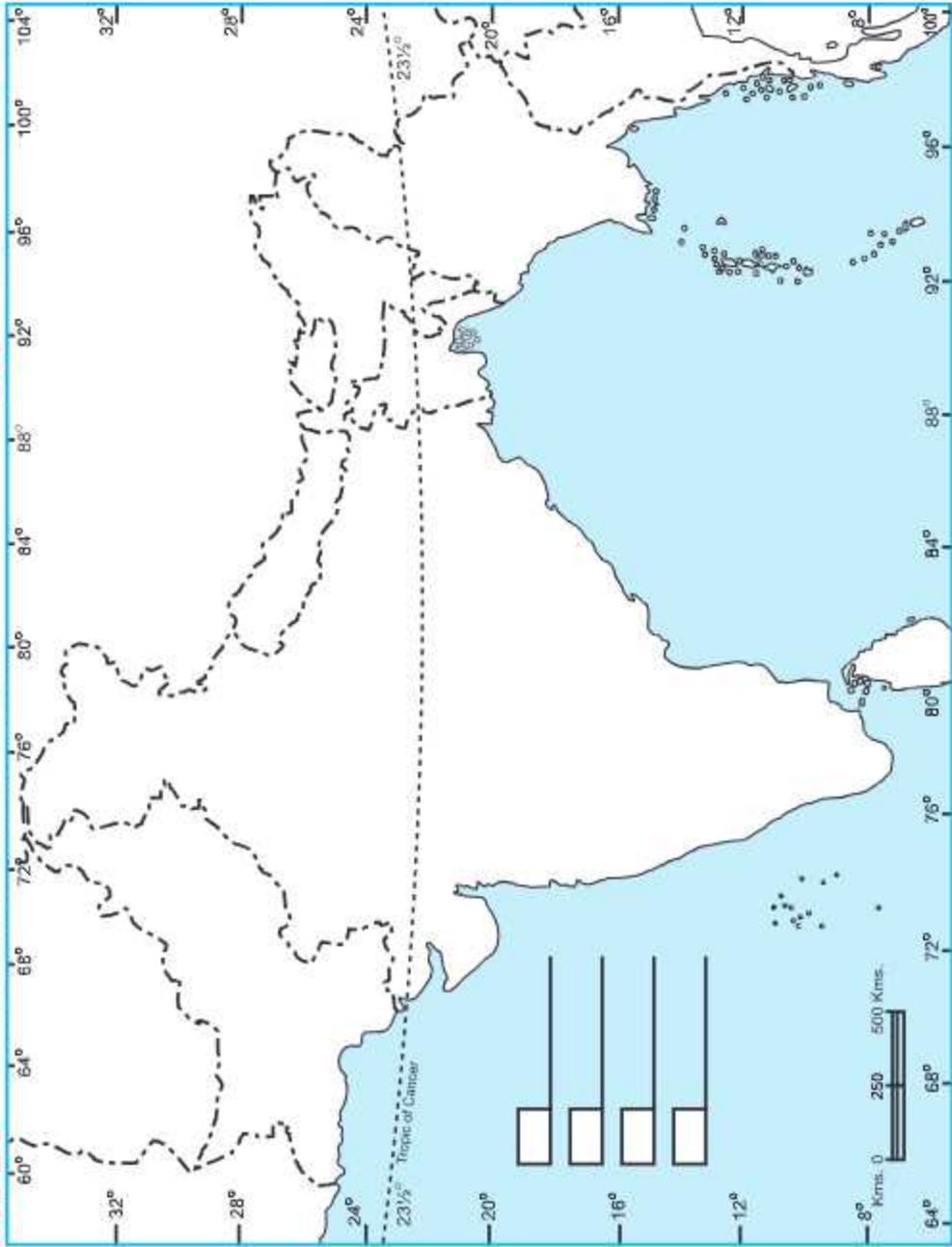


1. Based upon Survey of India Map with the permission of the Surveyor General of India
2. The territorial waters of India extend into the sea to a distance of twelve nautical miles measured from the appropriate baselines.
3. The interstate boundaries between Uttar Pradesh & Uttarakhand, Bihar & Jharkhand, Madhya Pradesh & Chhattisgarh have not been verified by the Government's committee.
4. The boundary of Meghalaya shown on this map is as stipulated from the North-Eastern Area (reorganisation) Act, 1971, but has yet to be verified.
5. The External Boundary and coastal line of India shown on this map agree with the Record/Master copy certified by the Survey of India, Dehra Dun. (Letter No. T.E. 90152-A-3013 Dated 05/02/03)
6. The administrative Headquarters of Chandigarh, Jharkhand and Puducherry are at Chandigarh.

© Government of India, Copyright 2011

Name Class Roll No. Teacher Signature

INDIA – PHYSICAL AND ADJACENT COUNTRIES **भारत – प्राकृतिक और पड़ोसी देश**



1. Based upon Survey of India Map with the permission of the Surveyor General of India.
2. The territorial waters of India extend into the sea to a distance of twelve nautical miles measured from the appropriate baselines.
3. The international boundaries between Uttar Pradesh & Uttarakhand, Bihar & Jharkhand, Madhya Pradesh & Chhattisgarh have not been verified by the Government's consent.
4. The boundary of Meghalaya shown on this map is as stipulated from the North-Eastern Area (Reorganisation) Act, 1951, but has yet to be verified.
5. The External Boundary and coastal line of India shown on this map agree with the Record/Master copy certified by the Survey of India, Dehra Dun. (Letter No. T.E. 90152-A-3013 Dated 05/02/03)
6. The administrative Headquarters of Chandigarh, Bhopal and Purpal are at Chandigarh.

© Government of India, Copyright 2011

Name Class Roll No. Teacher Signature



Agriculture, Industries and other commercial activities produce money resource and we need to keep the money safe in banks. Hence we need to study about such institutions and about various taxes and duties also which are necessary part of the resources. Let us study in brief:

What is a Bank ?

As per Banking Regulation Act, 1949, banking means accepting, for the purpose of lending or investment, deposits of money from the public, repayable on demand or otherwise, and withdrawable by cheque, draft, order or otherwise.

Scheduled and Non-Scheduled Banks

In India, banks have been broadly classified into scheduled and non-scheduled banks. A Scheduled Bank is that which has been included in the Second Schedule of the Reserve Bank of India Act, 1934 and fulfils the following conditions.

- a) It has paid-up capital and reserves of at least Rs. 5 lakh. It assures the Reserve Bank that its operations are not detrimental to the interest of the depositors;
- b) It is a corporation or a co-operative society and not a partnership or a single owner firm. Banks that are not included in the Second Schedule of the Reserve Bank of India Act are non-scheduled banks.

Types of Banks

Banks can be classified into various types based on their functions, ownership, domicile, etc. The following are the various types of banks :

(A) Classification on the basis of work-area :

1. Commercial Banks

Commercial banks refer to both Scheduled and Non-Scheduled Commercial banks that perform all kinds of banking business, such as financing trade and commerce. Schedule commercial banks are grouped into Nationalised banks, SBI & Associates, Private sector banks, Foreign banks and Regional Rural Banks (RRBs).

2. Regional Rural Banks

Regional Rural Banks were setup to help develop the rural economy by providing credit and other facilities, particularly to small and marginal farmers, agricultural labourers,

artisans and small entrepreneurs. Being local-level institutions, RRBs were assigned a critical role in the delivery of agriculture and rural credit.

3. Co-operative Banks

Co-operative banks are further classified into Rural and Urban Cooperative Banks based on the area of operation.

a) Rural Cooperative Banks

Agricultural credit needs are different from those of industry and trade. Agriculturists require :

- * Short-term credit to buy seeds, fertilisers and other inputs, and
- * Long-term credit to buy land, make permanent improvements on land, buy agricultural machinery and equipment, etc. in India, rural co-operative banks have a major role in providing agricultural finance.

The rural co-operative structure is bifurcated into short-term and long-term. The short-term co-operative structure is a three-tier structure with State Co-operative Banks (StCBs) at the apex (State) level, District Central Co-operative Banks (DCCBs) at the intermediate (district) level and Primary Agricultural Credit Societies (PACS) at the ground (village) level. The short-term structure caters primarily to the various short- and medium-term production and marketing credit needs of agriculture.

The long-term co-operative structure has the State Co-operative Agriculture and Rural Development Banks (SCARDBs) at the apex level and the Primary Co-operative Agriculture and Rural Development Banks (PCARDBs) at the district or block level. These institutions have the objective of meeting long-term credit needs in agriculture.

b) Urban Co-operative Banks

UCBs play a significant role in providing banking services to the middle and lower income groups of society in urban and semi-urban areas.

4. Reserve Bank of India

The central bank is the apex institution, which controls, regulates and supervises the monetary and credit system of the country. Important functions of the central bank are the Management and issue of currency notes, Banker and Debt Manager to the Government of India, Banker to Banks, custodian of the nation's reserves of International currency, lender of last resort, bank of central clearance, settlement and transfer and controller of credit. India's central bank, i.e., the Reserve Bank of India, also performs many development functions to promote economic developments in the country.

(B) Classification based on Ownership

On the basis of ownership, banks can be classified into three categories :

1) Public Sector Banks :

These are owned and controlled by the government. In India, the nationalised banks

and the regional rural banks come under this category.

2) Private Sector Banks :

These banks are owned by the private individuals or corporations and not by the government or co-operative societies.

3) Co-operative Banks :

Co-operative banks are operated along co-operative lines. In India, co-operative credit institutions are organised under the co-operative societies law and play an important role in meeting financial needs in the rural areas.

(C) On the basis of domicile, the banks are divided into two categories:

1) Domestic Banks :

These are registered and incorporated within the country.

2) Foreign Banks :

These are foreign in origin and have their head offices in the country of origin.

Let us check our knowledge about banks :

- * Banks that are included in the second schedule of the RBI of India Act, 1934 are known as _____.
 - a) Scheduled Banks b) Non-Scheduled Banks
 - c) Commercial Banks d) Development Banks
- * _____ handle all kinds of banking business, generally financing trade and commerce.
 - a) Scheduled Banks b) Non-Scheduled Banks
 - c) Commercial Banks d) Development Banks
- * _____ were assigned the critical role of delivering agriculture and rural credit.
 - a) Co-operative Banks b) Commercial Banks
 - c) Regional Rural Banks d) Development Banks
- * _____ banks are owned and controlled by the government.
 - a) Public Sector b) Private Sector
 - c) Central d) Exchange
- * _____ are foreign-in origin and have their head offices in the country of origin.
 - a) American Banks b) Foreign Banks
 - c) Domestic Banks d) State Banks

Cheques

A cheque is a document that orders the payment of money from a bank account. The following information will be printed on the cheques :

1. Your personal information : Name
2. Your bank's information : Name, Address, City, State and Pin Code.
3. The "CHEQUE NUMBER", Every cheque in the book in sequence. This number should always be noted so that you can check the status.
4. The second number is the MICR Number, MICR stands for Magnetic Ink Character Recognition. This is a technology that helps route the cheque to where the funds exist. It is used to efficiently transfer your money.
5. The third number is your account number as maintained by the Reserve Bank of India.
6. The last number tells if your account is current or savings which helps in faster processing in the case of out-station of cheques.

What is MICR Code ?

Magnetic Ink Character Recognition, or MICR, is a character recognition technology used primarily by the banking industry to facilitate the processing of cheques.

MICR characters are printed in special typefaces with a magnetic ink or toner, usually containing iron oxide. A special machine is used to read these characters, which can be easily read by humans too. The characters are usually printed on the bottom strip of a cheque.

This MICR code is used by the RBI clearing process to identify the branch and bank.

Every bank has a unique MICR Code. The MICR comprises nine digits, which are further sub-divided into the city, bank and branch codes.

1. **City Code** : The first three digits specify the city in which you have a bank account.
2. **Bank Code** : The next three digits specify your bank in that particular city.
3. **Branch Code** : The last three digits specify the branch of the bank.

What is IFSC ?

The Indian Financial System Code (also known as IFSC) is an 11 character code for identifying the bank and branch in which an account is held. The IFSC code is used for both the NEFT and RTGS funds transfer systems.

Let us check our knowledge about cheques :

- * A _____ is a document that orders a payment of money from a bank account.
 - a) Demand Draft
 - b) Fixed Deposit
 - c) Cheque
 - d) Debit Card
- * The _____ helps route the cheque to where the funds exist.
 - a) MICR Code
 - b) IFSC Code

- c) Account number d) Cheque number
- * The _____ is an 11-character code for identifying the bank and branch in which an account is held.
- a) MICR Code b) IFSC Code
- c) Account number d) Cheque number

TAXES

Income Tax:

An income tax is a government levy (tax) imposed on individuals or entities (taxpayers) that varies with the income or profits (taxable income) of the taxpayer.

Property Tax:

Property tax or 'house tax' is a tax on buildings, along with land, and is imposed on its owners. The tax is levied by the local government where the property is located.

Custom Duty:

Custom duties are indirect taxes that are levied on goods imported to/exported from India. There are different rules for different types of goods and sectors. The government keeps changing these rates so as to promote import/export of specific goods.

Excise Duty:

Excise duties are indirect taxes that are levied on goods manufactured in India for domestic consumption. Like custom duty, there are a number of rules that keep changing at the discretion of the government.

Sales Tax:

Sales tax is levied by the government on the sale and purchase of products in the Indian market. As customers, you pay sales tax on whatever you buy from the market.

VAT:

Value Added Tax is an indirect tax which is levied on the domestic consumption of goods and services, except those that are zero-rated (such as food and essential drugs) or are otherwise exempt (such as exports). It is levied at each stage in the chain of production and distribution from raw materials to the final sale based on the value (price) added at each stage. It avoids double taxation.

What are the Effects of Paying Taxes ?

The government uses different kinds of taxes and varies the tax rates. This is done to distribute the tax burden among individuals or classes of the population involved in taxable activities, such as business, or to redistribute resources between individuals or classes in the population.

Taxes reduce taxpayers' income. As a result, taxpayers have less money for personal

goods and services, savings and investment. The more services the government provides, the more taxpayer have to pay for them .Whenever new public goods and services are proposed that require new taxes, taxpayers must decide whether the additional benefits are worth the reduction in income.

Why do we pay taxes ?

Taxes are paid by all responsible citizens of the country. Taxation is the source of income for the government, and the money is used for the development of the whole country e.g., developing roads, infrastructure and education institutions. Therefore, though we do not get any direct benefit from the taxes we pay, still the money is used for us.

BANKING

Types of Accounts:

A bank is an institution that accepts money from one person as a deposit and lends to other person as a loan in return for some interest. Traditionally, banks in India have four types of deposit accounts namely, Current Account, Savings Bank Account, Recurring Deposit and Fixed Deposit.

1. Current Account:

Current account is mainly opened to run a business such as proprietorship, partnership firms public and private companies trust, association of persons, etc. that have a large number of daily banking transactions, i.e. receipts and/or payments. It is a non-interest bearing bank account and needs a higher minimum balance than a account. There is no restriction on the number and amount of deposits and withdrawals, as long as the account holder has funds in the bank account.

2. Savings Bank Account:

Savings Bank Accounts are one of the most popular deposit accounts for individuals. Saving accounts are opened to encourage people to save money and deposit their savings. Interest is paid on saving accounts, which is often nominal. These accounts can be opened in single or joint names. The account holder is allowed to withdraw money from the account as and when required. These accounts not only provide a cheque facility but also have a lot of flexibility for deposits and withdrawal of funds for the account. Most banks have rules for the minimum balance requirement for these accounts.

However, now banks are also required to open Basic Savings Bank Deposit Accounts that do not have a minimum balance requirement. The benefit of a savings bank account over a current account is that money in a savings bank account earned interest.

3. Recurring Deposit Account:

Recurring Deposit Accounts are popularly known as RD accounts. They are opened by people who want to save regularly for a certain period and earn a higher interest rate than the Savings account offers. These are best is you wish to creat a fund for

a special purpose such as college education or to buy a car or to save for the future. In a recurring deposit account, certain fixed amount is accepted every month for a specified period and the total amount is repaid with interest at the end of the period.

They are suitable for people who do not have a large amount of savings, but are ready to save a small amount every month. No withdrawals are allowed. However, the bank may allow the account to be closed before the maturity period. Any default in payment within the month attracts a small penalty. Recurring Deposit accounts are normally allowed for maturities ranging from 6 months to 120 months. These accounts can be opened in single or joint names.

4. Fixed Deposit Account:

These are popularly known as FD accounts. They are opened for a particular fixed period (time) by depositing a particular amount (money). The period for fixed deposits ranges between 7 days and 10 years. The money deposited in this account cannot be withdrawn before the fixed period expires. The depositor is given a fixed deposit receipt, which he/she has to produce at the time of maturity. Withdrawals are not allowed; however, in case of need, the depositor can ask for the fixed deposit account to be closed by paying a penalty. The rate of interest paid for fixed deposit depends on the amount and period and differs from bank to bank. Usually fixed deposits are paid in a lump sum on the date of maturity. However most banks also provide a facility to pay interest at the end of every month or quarter. The deposit can be renewed for a further period.

Do you know that you can open a bank account ? According to Reserve Bank of India rules, minors above the age of 10 years are allowed to open and operate savings bank accounts independently. A minor of any age can also open a savings bank or fixed deposit or recurring deposit account through his/her natural or legally appointed guardian.

Let us check our knowledge about Bank accounts :

- * Which type of account can be opened and operated independently by a minor above the age of 10 years ?
- * What does the term 'fixed' in fixed deposit accounts refer to ?
- * A savings bank account with no minimum balance requirement is called _____.

Answer the following questions :

- (i) Name the different types of bank accounts.
- (ii) Name the account opened by a business to run the business on a daily basis.
- (iii) Name the most popular deposit account for individuals.
- (iv) Name a benefit of a savings bank account over a current account.
- (v) Opening a recurring deposit account is suitable for certain types of people; Explain this.

- (vi) Why is one type of a bank account called a fixed deposit account ?
- (vii) At what age a minor can get his/her account opened in a bank and of what type ?
- * Which account should one open to run a business ?
 - a) Current Account b) Recurring Deposit Account
 - c) Savings Bank Account d) Fixed Deposit
 - * A _____ encourages people to save money and deposit their savings.
 - a) Current Account b) Recurring Deposit Account
 - c) Savings Bank Account d) Fixed Deposit
 - * A _____ is opened by those who wants to save regularly for a certain period of time.
 - a) Current Account b) Recurring Deposit Account
 - c) Savings Bank Account d) Fixed Deposit
 - * The account that is opened for a particular fixed period by depositing a particular amount is known as _____.
 - a) Recurring Deposit Account b) Fixed Deposit Account
 - c) Current Account d) Savings Account
 - * The rate of interest paid for fixed deposit _____.
 - a) varies according to the period and amount
 - b) is the same in all banks
 - c) differs from bank to bank
 - d) Both (a) and (c)

Banking with New technology :

The rapid advances in information and communication technology such as the widespread use of computers, mobiles and the Internet has enabled Indian banks to provide more diversified and convenient services to its customers. A few such technology enabled services are as follows :

1. Real Time Gross Settlement (RTGS) :

Real Time Gross Settlement (RTGS) is a system through which electronic instructions can be given to transfer funds, from the account of a customer in one bank to the account of a customer of another bank. It facilitates instant transfer of money from one account to another across cities. As the name suggests, funds transfer between banks takes place on a 'real time' basis. Therefore, money can reach the beneficiary instantaneously and the beneficiary's bank has the responsibility to credit the beneficiary's account within two hours from the time the transaction is initiated. RTGS is settled on a gross basis, which means that each transaction is settled independently. Complete

details such as the receiver's name, bank account number, account type (savings or current account), bank name, city and branch name, should be given to the bank when requesting such transfers so that the amount reaches the beneficiary account correctly and faster. This is basically a large value remittance system where funds can be transferred quickly with the minimum amount to be transferred through RTGS being 2 lakh rupees. This facility is useful to banks for their funds management for companies to transfer large amounts and for individuals who require urgent payments.

2. National Electronic Fund Transfer (NEFT) :

National Electronic Funds Transfer or NEFT is a system whereby anyone who wants to make payment to another person / company can approach his bank and give instructions/ authorisation to transfer funds directly from his account to the bank account of the receiver / beneficiary. NEFT operates in hourly batches and funds will be transferred after each settlement cycle. There are twelve settlement cycles during weekdays and six settlement cycles on Saturday. The amount is credited in the beneficiary's account within two hours. Complete details such as the receiver's name, bank account number, account type (savings or current account), bank name, city and branch name, should be given to the bank when requesting such transfers so that the amount reaches the beneficiary account correctly and faster.

There is no minimum or maximum limit for transferring money through NEFT.

3. Internet Banking

Internet banking allows individuals to carry out banking activities from anywhere and at any time via the Internet without visiting a bank branch. Through online banking, individuals can access their account information anytime and perform all kinds of routine transaction such as money transfers, balance inquiries and bill payments. Anyone with Internet access can avail of online banking facilities by registering with his/her bank. Online banking is also known as Internet banking, e-banking, web banking, virtual banking, etc.

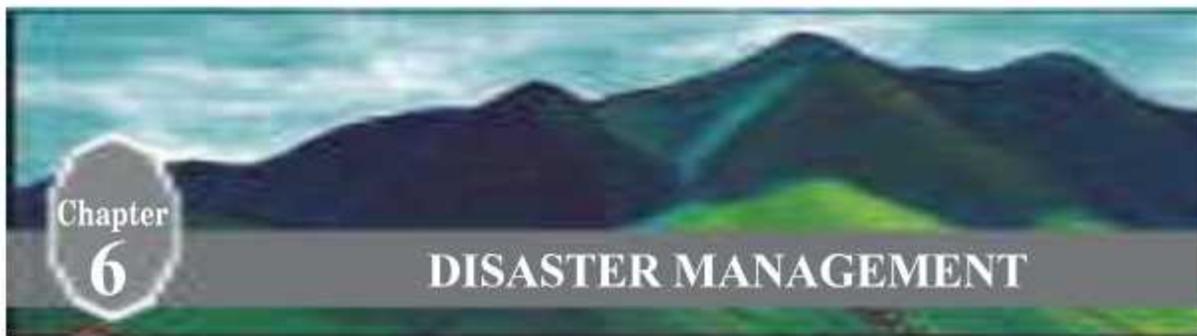
4. Mobile Banking

Mobile banking refers to the use of a cellular device to perform banking activities such as monitoring account balances, transferring money and paying bills. Like online banking a customer needs to register with the bank to avail of mobile banking facilities. Until recently most of the mobile banking facilities were offered via SMS and were known as SMS banking.

Let us check our knowledge about New banking techniques.

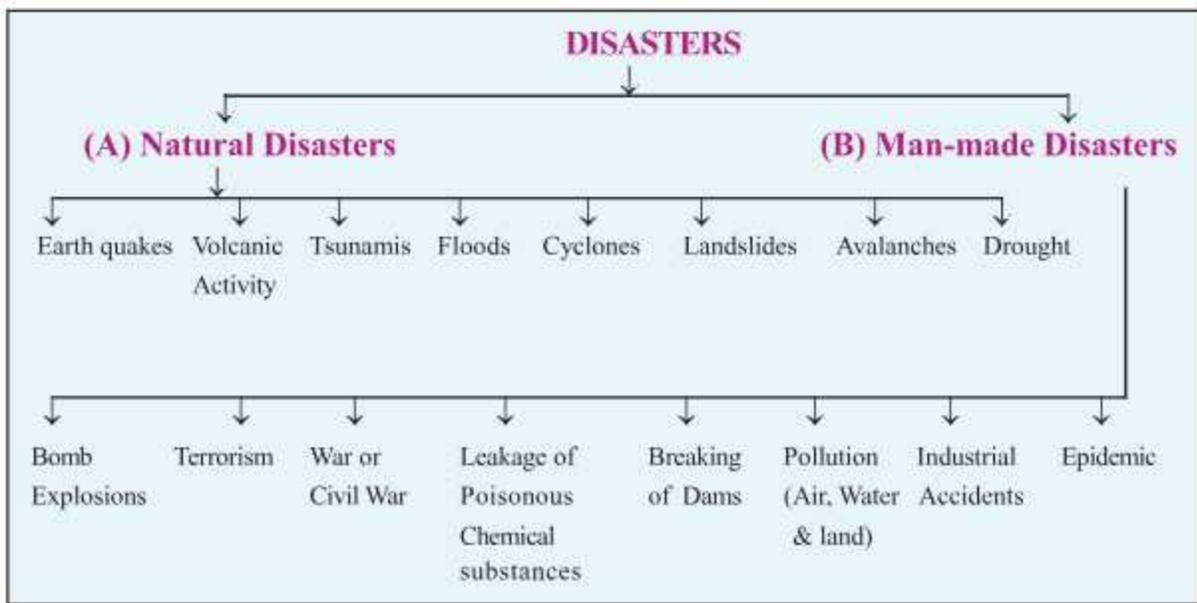
- * What is RTGS ?
- * What is NEFT ?
- * What is Internet banking ?
- * What is Mobile banking ?

- * List the various details that should be furnished to the bank at the time of requesting for RTGS facility.
- * What is the minimum amount that can be transferred through RTGS ?
- * What is the minimum amount required to be transferred through RTGS ?
- * What is the minimum amount that can be transferred through NEFT ?
- * What are the other names for Internet banking ?
- * Differentiate between NEFT and RTGS.



Chapter
6
DISASTER MANAGEMENT

Man has been facing different types of problems since his origin. In the beginning, these problems were created by the nature but with his development the causes and types of problems have also changed. Presently, man has become slave to the various dangers created by himself. These dangers affect the man to a small or large extent in one form or the other, now and then. When the hazards or dangers take the form of dangerous accidents, these are called disasters. Sometimes the disasters end up in a large scale destruction to man. The disasters can mainly be divided into the following classes :



Disasters natural or man-made, both affect the life of man to a great extent. The disasters like earthquakes and volcanoes occur for a very short period of time but cause a very large scale destruction. Sometime back the tsunami killed lacs of people. Natural calamities like floods and cyclones cause a big loss to life and property. People are rendered homeless. The Bhopal gas leak tragedy is still not forgotten to the people. The bomb explosions in the U.S.A. has put the big countries into worries.

Though it is very difficult to be safe from the disasters completely yet the losses from the disasters can be reduced to a greater extent. There is need for 'management' which is named as 'disaster management.' The subject of disaster management relates to the safety and protection from the natural or the human disasters or to minimise the dangers created by these disasters. It includes the management like – to fight with the disasters, to get prepared before the disaster strikes, safety and protection at the time of the disaster and to uplift the society after the **disaster**. In disaster management, the plans already prepared are put to use. At personal level, group level, community level, non-government and government level - all contribute towards the common problem. In these days the subject of disaster management has been started in the schools so that the students at their own level get ready to fight with such problems. According to an estimate about 30 lakh people have lost their lives due to the natural or human disasters in the last 20 years. Therefore, because of the significance of the subject it becomes necessary to get more knowledge about it. Here we will study about the causes and protection from some important disasters :

1. Earthquake :

The shaking of the earth is named as earthquake. Sometimes these earthquakes are so minor that we do not feel even but when the intensity of the earthquake is very high, it causes destruction all around. The speed or intensity of the earthquake is measured on the two scales 'Richter Scale' and Marcallis Scale ;

(1) Richter Scale : This is an open scale, i.e., how much intensity of earthquake is. An earthquake, measured at 8 Richter Scale is more intensified than that of 4 Richter Scale.

(2) Marcalli Scale : This scale measures how much loss has been occurred due to the earthquake and this scale is demarcated from 1 (No loss at all) to 12 (every thing has been destroyed).

The earthquakes are caused by the internal movements of the earth. These also happen with the shifting of the tectonic plates of the earth. The point inside the earth where the earthquake waves originate is called 'seismic focus.' The point on the surface of the earth which is vertically above the seismic focus is called 'epicentre.' The epicentre and its surrounding area is the most affected area by the earthquake. The study related with the earthquakes is called seismology and the device which records the earthquakes is called 'seismograph' or the earthquake measuring instrument.

The 2/3 of the total earthquakes of the world occur in the 'Ring of Fire' in the Pacific ocean. The major hilly areas like the Himalayas and the Alps are also earthquake prone regions of the world. Kashmir and Western Himalayas, Middle Himalayas, North East India, plains of the Ganga and the Indus, Rajasthan and Gujarat, Lakshadweep, Andaman and Nicobar lands etc. are the earthquake prone regions of India.



A view after earthquake

The earthquakes cause a big destruction on the earth. A big loss is caused to the railway lines, roads, dams, bridges, houses etc. by the cracks which appear on the surface of the earth with the occurrence of the earthquakes. The water supply, electricity lines and gas pipes also get affected. There is a big loss of life and property.

Earthquakes and Protection :

The occurrence of the earthquake can not be predicted. It strikes suddenly and at once. Having knowledge about the earthquake prone areas, some precautionary measures can be adopted to save ourselves from its bad effects. As earthquake disaster management we should keep into mind, the following important point :-

- (i) The designs and the construction of the buildings in the earthquake prone areas should be such that no damage is caused to the buildings by the earthquakes. The earthquake resistant buildings are being constructed in the countries like Japan where the earthquakes are very common. The houses and the buildings should also be insured.
- (ii) There should not be any panic or terror when the earthquake strikes, rather we should remain calm and work intelligently.
- (iii) If you are sitting indoors at the time of the earthquake then instead of running outside take yourself under some hard things like beds and table or stand in the door.
- (iv) If you are outside at the time of the earthquake then move to the open space. We should not stand near the buildings, trees, electric poles and wires etc. as these may fall down.

- (v) We all should help the earthquake affected people. They should be provided with medical and other facilities like houses etc.
- (vi) The persons who have been killed or injured should be taken out from the buildings quickly. The injured should be taken to the hospitals or the camps set up for the purpose so that their lives can be saved by providing medical facilities at the proper time.
- (vii) The means of transport and communication which ave been affected by the earthquake should be resumed at the earliest.
- (viii) It becomes the foremost duty of the government to provide houses and other required facilities to the people who have been rendered homeless by the earthquake.

2. Volcanic Activity :

The interior part of the earth is still very hot. Due to the high temperature the rocks inside the earth which are in the molten state come outside from the weaker part of the earth in the form of lava. The process of coming of lava over the surface of the earth is known as the 'volcano'. Different types of gases, steam and other substances also come out with the lava. The thin lava spreads to a long distance where as the thick lava starts depositing near the vent intself. Some volcanoes affect upto hundreds of miles and cause a big destruction of the people living in the surrounding areas. The volcanoes mainly are of three types :

- (a) Active Volcanoes
- (b) Dormant Volcanoes
- (c) Extinct Volcanoes

The lava comes out of the active volcanoes at different times. The dormant volcano is at rest for a very long time. These dormant volcanoes had been active in the past. The extinct volcanoes are such the marks or signs of volcanic features are there but no record of their being active is found in the history. But any type of volcano may erupt at any time. Most of the volcanoes are found in 'Ring of Fire' in Pacific Ocean. Some volcanoes are very destructive in nature. There was a large scale loss of life and property in 750 sq.km. are with the eruption of volcano in Mexico in the year 1943.

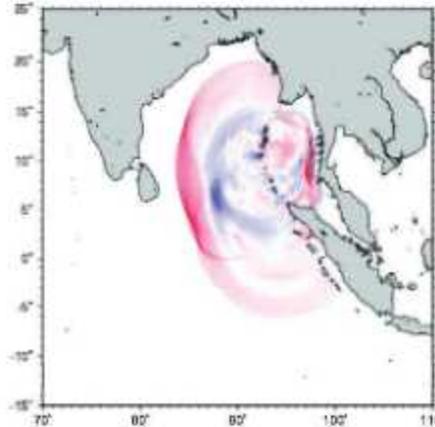
Volcanoes and Protection. The buildings or houses should not be constructed near the volcanic prone area. On seeing some signs of volcanic eruption we should move away from this area. To move away from this place faster means of transport should be used. The government should be ready to provide medical or other facilities in case of any such accidents.

3. Tsunamis :

Tsunamis is a type of sea wave which may originate from the occurrence of earthquake, volcanoes, landslides etc. Due to the shaking of the sea relief, high water waves originate and cause a big destruction in or outside the sea. The tsunamis which occurred on December 26,2004 affected around 11 Countries of South and South East Asia and East Africa. In these tsunamis of India Ocean more than 1.5 lakh people died and many others were rendered homeless. Besides, a big loss of property was caused.



Destruction due to Tsunami



Earthquake occurred on ocean relief in Sumatra (2004)

Tsunamis and Protection : After getting the information we should not go to the sea. The ships and the boats sailing in the sea should be back to the ports. The fishermen should also avoid going to sea till these tsunamis receded or stop completely. The people who are living near the places most affected by tsunamis should always be prepared to fight such type of natural calamity. If the tsunamis are approaching fastly towards the sea coast, then the people of coastal areas should move away to the safer places. The government should have the complete arrangement to fight with such a problem. We all should help the people who are in trouble.

4. Flood : Due to heavy rains, water flows in the rivers and streams beyond their carrying capacity. This surplus water affects the surrounding areas. This condition is known as 'flood'. Sometimes the floods cause a large scale destruction of life and property. The main causes of the floods are given as below :

- (a) Heavy rain
- (b) High speed cyclones
- (c) Bursting of clouds
- (d) Poor drainage system

- (e) Deposition of silt on the beds of the rivers and streams
- (f) Breaking of dams
- (g) Construction of residential buildings in the areas affected by the rivers.

The countries of South Asia are badly affected by the floods. The countries like China, Bangladesh and India have to face the problems of floods. These floods do cause a big loss to life and property, directly and afterwards also people are badly affected by various diseases and epidemics.

Floods and Protection :

- (i) It becomes beneficial for the people of flood prone areas to get information from the meteorology department time to time. In case of danger they should leave that place and move to other safer places. If possible they should also take their cattles along with or leave them free.
- (ii) Before the flood strikes, all the belongings should be taken to the higher places if possible or kept it covered on the roof.
- (iii) Only boiled water should be used for drinking purposes.
- (iv) The affected people should be taken out with the help of the army and the helicopters.
- (v) It is the duty of the government to arrange for the food and medical facilities for the flood affected people.
- (vi) The government should also provide the houses to those, whose houses have been destroyed in the floods.
- (vii) There should also be a proper medical arrangements to fight with the disease and epidemics caused after the floods.
- (viii) It becomes the moral duty of every citizen to help the people who are affected by the problem like floods.

5. Cyclones :

The Cyclones or storms are the fast blowing winds at the speed of 63 km per hour or more. The cyclones are produced due to low pressure of winds. Mostly the cyclones originate from 5° to 20° North and South of the equator. These cyclones are also called as 'tropical cyclones.' When the speed of these cyclones exceeds 100 km per hour, they take the form of a disaster and cause a lot of destruction in the surrounding areas. The telephone and electricity lines and poles are uprooted and fall down to the earth. The trees stop the vehicular traffic when they fall on the roads. There is a big loss to the huts, mud house and other weak buildings. The ships and boats also get affected. Many cattle and human beings are also killed when they are trapped in the cyclones. The crops standing in the fields

also get damaged which causes a big economic loss to the farmers. These cyclones known in the World by various names. These are called as 'hurricanes' in North America, 'typhoons' in South East Asia and storms, cyclones or whirlwinds in India.

Cyclones and Protection :

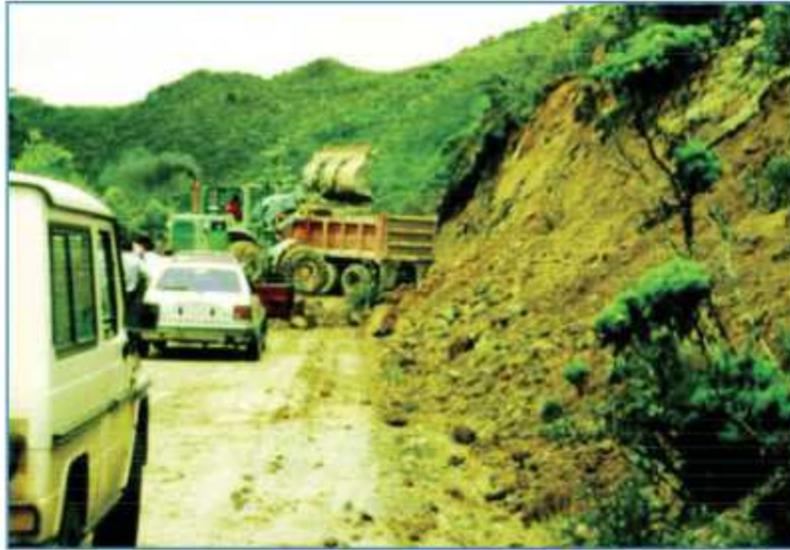
- (i) To stop these cyclones is not in the hands of man but we can save ourselves from its bad effects or the loss can be minimised. The mud houses or the huts should not be made near the sea coasts – the most affected parts by the cyclones.
- (ii) The big buildings and schools etc. can be used to shelter the cyclone affected people.
- (iii) When there is danger of cyclones, the ships, boat and the fisherman should not be allowed to go into the seas.
- (iv) The buildings in the cyclone prone areas should be constructed in such a manner so that they can face the force of the speedy winds.
- (v) Anti-flood steps should be adopted to be saved from the floods which are caused by the cyclones.
- (vi) The trees in lines should be planted along the sea coast in a direction opposite to the direction of the cyclones to reduce its speed.
- (vii) We should be continuously in touch with the information from different sources and should follow the instructions given by the experts time to time.
- (viii) The government should have the proper arrangements to face such type of situation and for the help of the affected people.

6. Landslides :

The coming down of the soil, rocks and other material along the slopes under the gravitational force of earth is called 'landslide'. In this process the land moves down at once with a speed. When the slope is steeper the speed of the landslide is increased further. The main causes of landslide can be the internal movements of the earth, heavy rains, volcanic eruption, earthquakes or mining etc. The bare land after the cutting of the trees further contributes to the landslides. A large area gets covered with the earth after the occurrence of landslides. The trees and the roads are damaged. The motor vehicles, cattle and human beings which are trapped in the landslides get badly affected.

Landslides and Protection :

- (i) The buildings should not be constructed in the landslide prone areas.
- (ii) The naked slopes are more prone to the landslides therefore the cutting of the forests should be stopped.



Blocked vehicles/Traffic due to Landslide

- (iii) The running water on the stops helps in causing landslides. Therefore this water should be properly drained.
- (iv) The water pipes, electricity and telephones lines should be flexible and fitted underground so that these do not get damaged with the problem like landslides.
- (v) More trees in rows should be planted to check the speed of the landslides.
- (vi) Along the hills and on the sides of the roads high retaining walls should be made. It will minimize the loss caused by the landslides on the roads.

7. Avalanches :-

The coming down of the ice and snow also causes a lot of problems for man. A big loss is caused to the roads, buildings, and vehicles. If the problem increases then loss of life may also be caused.

When there is fresh snowfall. Then it may slide over the ice and comes down. Sometimes the half melted glaciers break and slide down.

Avalanches and protection :

- (i) The people likely to be affected should possess the full knowledge about the avalanches. They will save themselves only if they have the required knowledge.
- (ii) More forests and trees should be grown in such areas. These trees and other type of vegetation will check the movement and speed of the avalanches.
- (iii) A sort of construction can be done in the path of the avalanches to change its direction and for the checking its speed. This way the loss from these avalanches can be minimized.

- (iv) If the avalanches stop the flow of vehicular traffic on the roads then it can be removed with the help of minor blasts or bulldozers.
- (v) It is the duty of the government to provide shelter and other required facilities to the people affected by avalanches.

8. Drought :

The meaning of 'drought' is the lack of shortage of water required for the crops, cattle and human beings. Many parts of the world have shortage of rivers, streams and underground water sources. These parts depend mainly on rains. If the rains fail then these areas have to face the problem of drought. The crops also fail as there is no humidity in the soil. The cattle also start dying with hunger and thirst. Sometimes the farmers also commit suicides as they are unable to face such type of problem.



A view of Earth surface due to drought

Drought and Protection :

- (i) Only the water can save us from the drought conditions. If we always use the water with care then there will not be shortage of water. It means that the water should not be wasted.
- (ii) More of trees should be planted in such areas as it gives rise to the humidity. The trees also help in bringing the rains.
- (iii) In the drought prone areas low water requiring crops like maize, millets, pulses etc. should only be grown.
- (iv) The government should supply the required amount of water to the drought hit areas from the water rich areas by laying special pipe lines, so that the life of the cattle and the people can be saved.

- (v) The water can be stored in the tanks or dams in the drought prone areas which can be used at the time of the scarcity of water.
- (vi) The government should adopt all possible measures to take the people out of the problem of drought. Instead of agriculture, other economic occupations should be developed so that the people can be saved from the problem of drought.

Man-made Disasters and their Management :-

The disasters, created directly or indirectly by man are called 'human disasters.' Man knowingly or without knowledge creates these problems. When these problems cross certain limits, they take the form of big disasters. The information and protection about the disasters is given as under :

1. Bomb Explosion and Terror Attacks :-

The bombs were made to protect the country from the outer attacks. But some people use the bombs to cause destruction within the country. A number of terrorist groups do the destructional activities to break or disturb the peace in the country. Many innocent people are killed and many others get badly affected in these bomb explosions. The bomb explosions also affect the development of the country. A large number of people were killed and a big loss to the property was caused due to the dangerous terrorist attacks in New York and Pentagon cities of the U.S.A. on September 11, 2001.

Protections from explosions and attacks :-

- (i) The government should take the appropriate steps at the national and international level to solve the problems of bomb explosion and terrorist attacks.
- (ii) The unclaimed substances should not be touched as it may be a bomb, the police should be informed immediately.
- (iii) At the time of bomb explosion or terror attacks the situation of panic or terror should not be created, rather we should handle the situation quickly and intelligently.
- (iv) The police and intelligence department should keep full vigil on such types of activities. There should be more supervision and vigilance in the crowded places. The people found guilty should be punished strictly under the law.
- (v) The people should immediately be taken to the hospital who have been injured in the bomb explosion or terror attack.
- (vi) The law and order should be maintained at any cost.

2. Breaking of water Dams and Safety measures :

This is well known to us that a very large quantity of water is collected in the dams. The water starts flowing like a flood after the breaking of a dam. The situation becomes worse if the size of the dam is very big. The life of human beings is put to big dangers. Therefore, all arrangements should be made to fight with the situation of floods. The safety and security of life and property of the people should be the main priority of the government.

3. Leakage of poisonous substance or other industrial incidents and protection :

There is use of big machines, chemical substances and many types of inflammable and poisonous gases in the industries. While using these substances any bad incident may happen. Sometimes these incidents are so big that it is very difficult to forget such incidents.



Damage caused due to fire

The Bhopal Gas leak tragedy is still fresh in our minds. Thousands of people were killed due to this tragedy. Till date some children are born handicapped. Sometimes fire may spread due to the bursting of cylinders in the factories or any other big accident may also happen. Therefore to avoid such type of problem, every industry should have the proper arrangements. The fire extinguishers should always be ready. In case of accidents the fast arrangements to take the workers out should also be there. The situation of panic should not be created there rather safety measures should work peacefully. The affected people should be given medical facilities without any delay. All the employees working in the factories should be insured. The government should provide every type of required help to the affected people.

4. Epidemics and Protective measures :

When a disease spreads and affects a large number of people it is called 'epidemic'. Sometimes the diseases like Cholera, Dengue fever, Yellow fever or diarrhoea take the form of a big disaster or epidemic. The reasons for these diseases may be any but these spread to a large number of people if not treated at the proper time. These diseases may be caused by the cutting of mosquitoes or insects and air and water pollution. The disease like AIDS started from the monkeys of Africa but now affecting lakhs of people of the world.

Protection :

If we want to be saved from the epidemics, we should protect ourselves from the diseases. The pure air, water and clean surrounding can save us from many diseases. Even then if a diseases spreads then medical facilities should be available. In case of epidemic the teams of doctors and the hospitals should work in full swing. The development of slums around the cities should be stopped. There should be regular check up of diseases in the villages, cities and schools so that we can protect ourselves from the big diseases.

Disaster Management Authorities and Institutions in India :-

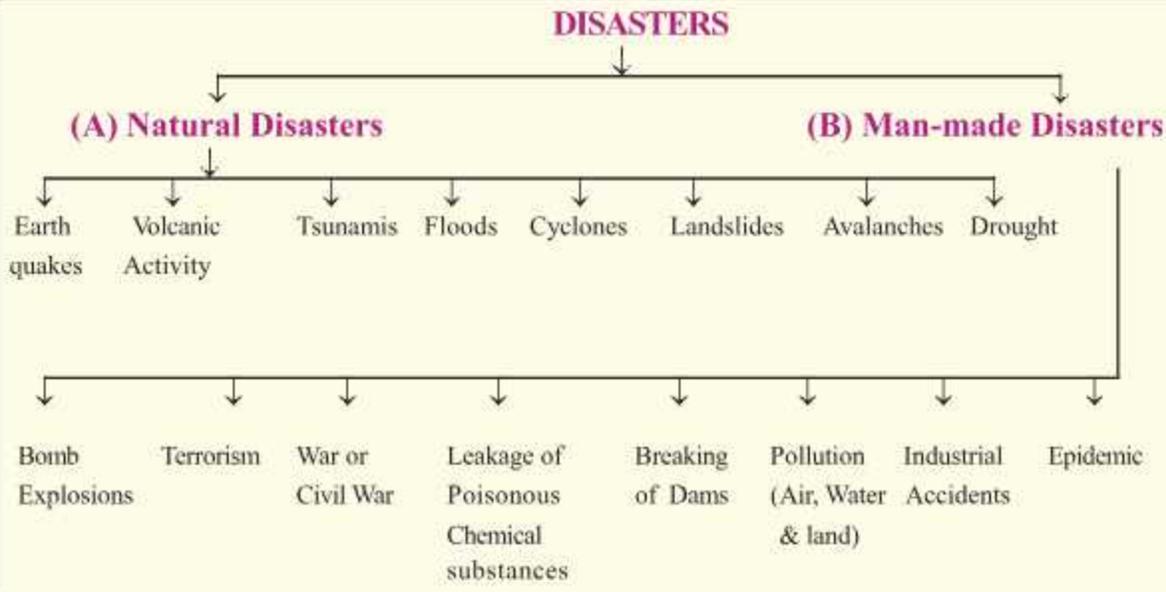
There are many institutes in India which offer short term engineering level courses in disaster management and also provide information regarding the disaster management. Some of these are mentioned below :

1. Central Disaster Management Authority, New Delhi.
2. National Centre for Disaster Management, New Delhi.
3. Information Centre of Earthquake Engineering I.I.T., Kanpur (U.P.)
4. Disaster Management Institute, Bhopal (M.P.)
5. Disaster Mitigation Institute Ahmadabad, Gujarat
6. Environment Protection Training & Research Institute, Hyderabad (A.P.)
7. Joint Assistance Centre, Gurgaon (Haryana)
8. National civil Defence college, Nagpur (Maharashtra)
9. Indira Gandhi National Open University (IGNOU), New Delhi, also conducts various courses in disaster management.
10. Central Board of Secondary Education (CBSE), New Delhi is also planning to provide disaster management training to the students of the senior classes. In this way the students will be prepared to fight with such disasters from the schools itself.

POINTS TO REMEMBER

Disaster Management : It is an important subject which related to natural or man made disasters.

Disasters : Hazards, when take the form of dangerous accidents, are called disasters.



Natural Disasters - Protection and Management

Man made Disasters - Protection and Management

Disaster Management Authorities and Institutions in India :

1. Central Disaster Management Authority New Delhi.
2. National Centre for Disaster Management New Delhi.
3. Information Centre of Earthquake Engineering IIT, Kanpur, U.P.
4. Disaster Management Institute Bhopal, M.P.
5. Disaster Mitigation Institute Ahmadabad, Gujarat.
6. Environment Protection Training & Research Institute Hyderabad, (A.P.)
7. Joint Assistance Centre Gurgoan (Haryana).
8. National Civil Defence College, Nagpur (Maharashtra).
9. Indira Gandhi National Open Univesrity, (IGNOU) New Delhi.
10. Central Board of Secondary Education (CBSE), New Delhi.



I. Answer the following questions in 1-15 words :

1. What is meant by the disasters ?
2. What are the main natural disasters ?
3. What is an earthquake ? How is it measured ?
4. What is a Volcano ? Write the names of its types.
5. How does the tsunami originate ?
6. What are the main causes of floods ?
7. What is a cyclone ? By what other names it is called ?
8. What do you mean by the human disasters ?
9. What do you understand form the term epidemic ?

II. Answer the following questions in 50-60 words :

1. How do the disasters affect the man ?
2. What things we should take care of in the disaster management of earthquakes ?
3. What protective measures should be taken to save ourselves from the volcanoes and tsunamis ?
4. What steps can be taken for protection from drought ?
5. What measures can save us from the disasters like epidemic ?

III. Activity :

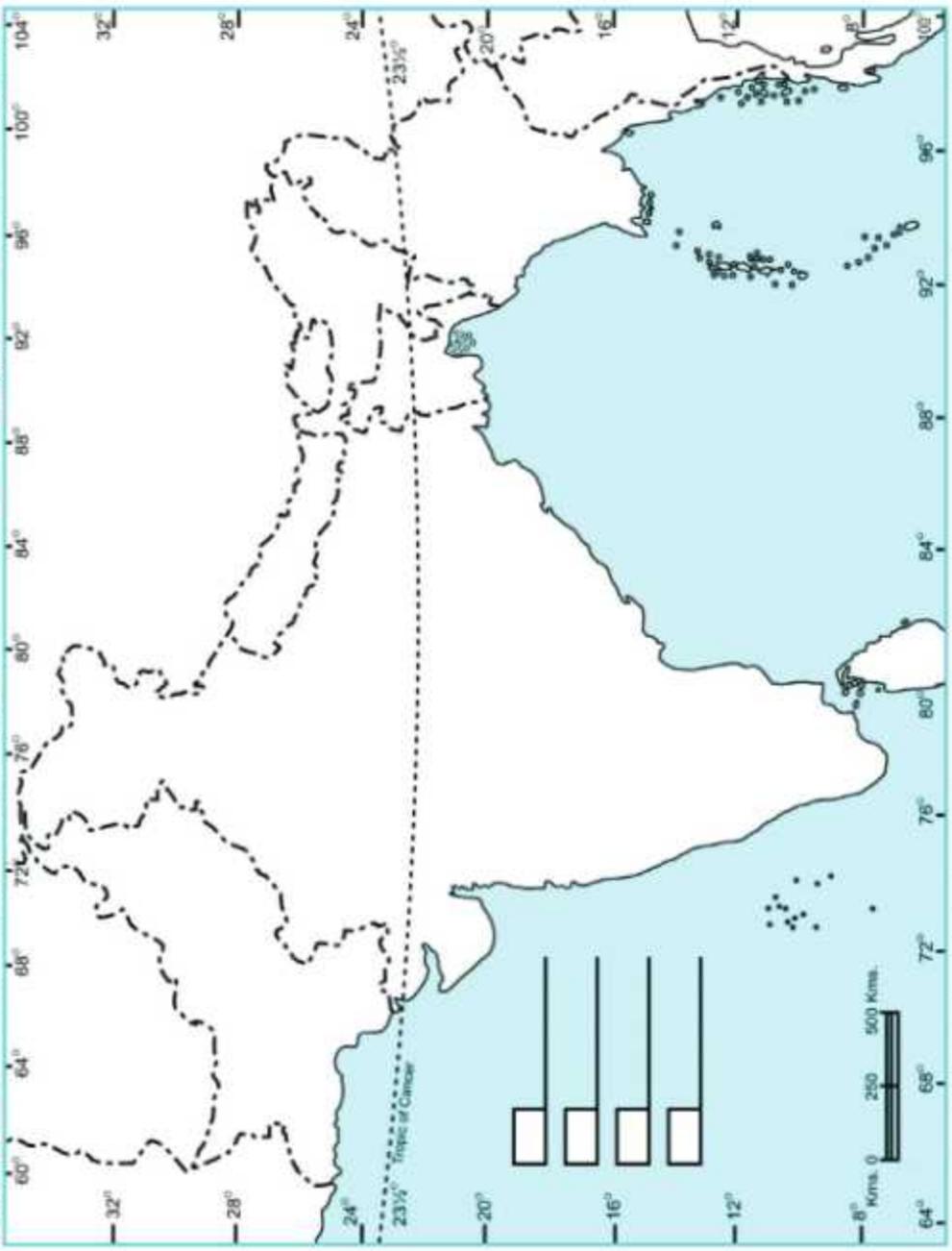
Prepare a report of 3-4 pages on natural disaster faced by India in Uttrakhand in June, 2013. Use related pictures with the help of Internet.

OR

Prepare a report on any other natural diaster with the help of your teacher.



INDIA – PHYSICAL AND ADJACENT COUNTRIES **भारत – प्राकृतिक और पड़ोसी देश**



1. Based upon Survey of India Map with the permission of the Surveyor General of India.
2. The maritime waters of India extend into the sea to a distance of twelve nautical miles measured from the appropriate baseline.
3. The maritime boundaries between Uttar Pradesh & Uttarakhand, Bihar & Jharkhand, Madhya Pradesh & Chhattisgarh have not been verified by the Government concerned.
4. The boundary of Nagalaya shown on this map is as interpreted from the North-Eastern Areas (Reorganisation) Act, 1951, but has yet to be verified.
5. The External Boundary and coast-line of India shown on this map agree with the Record Master copy certified by the Survey of India, Dehradun.
6. The administrative headquarters of Chandigarh, Hyderabad and Puducherry are of Chandigarh. (Letter No. 13, 997-GEA.3/271 Dated 5/5/2003)

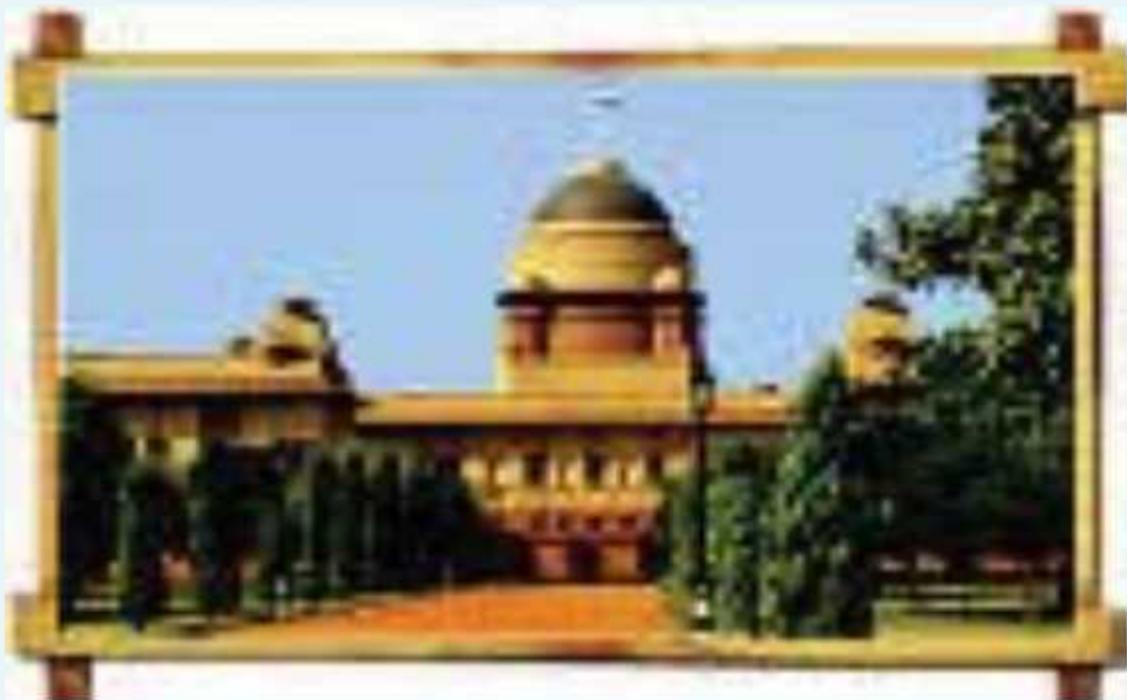
© Government of India, Copyright 2011

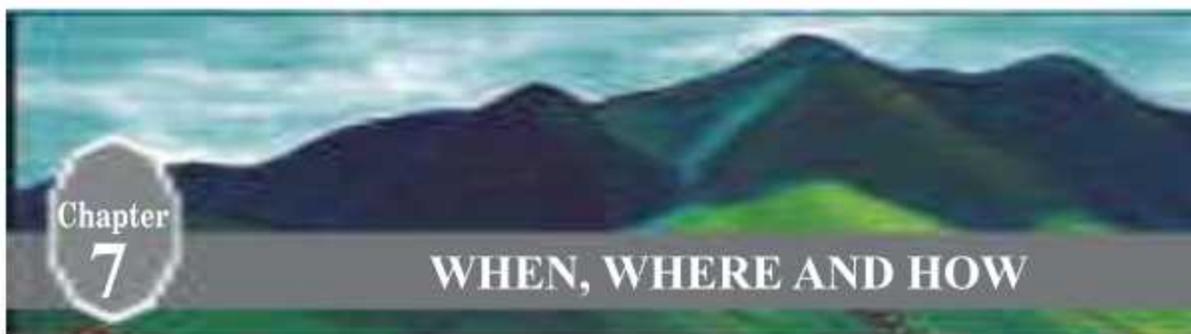
Name Class Roll No. Teacher Signature

PART II

HISTORY

OUR PAST-III





An Overview of the Modern Period

History is the study of the past. Historians have divided the history of the world into three periods – Ancient, Medieval and Modern. So in this way, Indian History has also been divided into Ancient, Medieval and Modern Period.

But the time of beginning of these periods is not the same in different parts of the world. For example, the modern period is said to have begun in Europe in the 16th Century, but in India, the 16th Century, when the Mughal rulers like Babar, Humayun and Akbar ruled over India was a part of the medieval period. Those countries of the world who progressed much faster than those whose pace for development was slower, witnessed the emergence of the modern period earlier.

In India, Modern Period began in the 18th Century after the death of Mughal Emperor Aurangzeb. During this period, many of the old powers began weakening and in their place many new powers like Marathas, Sikhs, Rohillas, Pathans and Rajputs emerged. The mutual struggle among the Indian powers paved the way for the foreign powers like Portuguese, Dutch, British and French to try for supremacy and establish their own empire in India. With the coming of these foreign powers the modern period began in India.

So in this way modern period in Europe began in the 16th Century, but in India it began in the 18th Century. There were many social evils prevalent in India compared with foreign societies. To root out these social evils from the society many social reformers tried their best. In the economic field also there were many shortcomings, So many Indian administrators and economists paid special attention towards agriculture, trade and industry to improve it. At that time many schools and colleges were established where foreign languages were taught so side by side with the Indian languages. Western ideas enlightened the Indians along with western education and literature so in this.

Among Indians the feeling of freedom, equality and brotherhood emerged as soon as they got education about western culture, history and philosophy. Now how could Indians tolerate the foreign rule and the exploitation of their motherland? So

they started the national movement against the British rule. They got the independence in 1947 after so much sacrifices and intolerant atrocities.

After independence of India there started the task of reorganization of India and rebuilding its economy. India have then achieved a respectively place among the great countries of the world after putting so much efforts and progress. So in this way modern period is full of tensions, pressures and challenges and ups and downs. Still gradually, we Indian are trying our best for more progress and prosperity.

Major Developments During Modern Period

18th Century is regarded as the darkest period in Indian History because during this period after the downfall of Mughal Emperor, there started a struggle for supremacy not only among the regional powers but also among the foreign powers.

By taking the advantages of the weakness of the Mughal Empire many regional powers declared themselves independent. In 1724 AD Nizam-ul-mulk founded the independent state of Hyderabad. After this because of the lack of central power Murshid-Quli-Khan and Ali Vardi Khan founded independent state of Bengal. In 1739 AD Sadaat Khan made Avadh an independent state, after Hyderabad, in South Mysore state was founded which progressed under Hyder Ali and Tipu Sultan. Marathas also took the advantage of the situation and started attacking Mughal territories.

European powers like Protuguese, Dutch, French and Britishers also took the advantage of the situation and tried to found their rule in India. Because of this three Carnatic wars were fought among French and Britishers during the period 1746 to 1763 in which British emerged victorious.

After the downfall of the Mughal Empire, economy of the country suffered because of the disturbances and law and order problem. British got monopoly over Indian trade. Indian art and craft ruined which was very popular in the world.

Main Sources of Modern Indian History

History is based on facts. To reconstruct the history historians have to depend on various sources. To know about the modern Indian History there are many sources. Some of them are mentioned below :-

- 1. Books :** With the invention of the printing press many books were published in English as well as in Indian languages. Through these books we get the knowledge about the progress made by man in the field like art, literature, science, history and music. By reading these books we can get the inspiration for more progress.
- 2. Government Documents :** Government documents are the important source of the modern Indian history. By studying these we get the knowledge of the mutual relations and the way how the Britishers controlled the Indian states ? From these

Government documents we also get knowledge about the ways the Britishers exploited Indian economically.

3. Newspapers, Magazines, Pamphlets etc. : We get information through newspapers, magazines and pamphlets about the modern period of Indian history which were published in India in different languages. Some of the news papers like The Tribune and The Times of India are still in publication.

4. Historical Buildings : Historical buildings are also the main source of modern Indian history. We still see these buildings around us even today, like India Gate, Birla House, Secretariats, President House, Parliament House etc. Through these historical buildings we get the information about different styles and techniques of Indian architecture in the recent past.

5. Paintings and Sculptures : Many statues and paintings are also important historical sources. These sources gives us information about the achievements of national leaders and historical personalities.



President House, Delhi



Parliament House, Delhi



India Gate, Delhi

POINTS TO REMEMBER

1. Indian history is divided into three parts - Ancient, Medieval and Modern period.
2. In India, Modern Period began in the 18th Century after the death of Mughal Emperor Aurangzeb.
3. Modern Period began in the 16th Century in Europe.
4. In 1739 A.D Nizam-ul-mulk founded an independent state of Hyderabad.
5. In 1746 A.D Sadaat Khan made Avadh an independent state.
6. Three Carnatic wars were fought between French and British during the period of 1746 A.D to 1763 A.D in which British were victorious.
7. Books, government documents, newspapers, magazines, pamphlets and historical buildings are main sources of modern Indian history.



(A) Write down the answer of the following questions :

1. In which three periods the historians divided Indian history ?
2. When modern period start in India ?
3. Write down the names of the European powers who came to India during the modern period.
4. When and by whom an independent state of Avadha was founded ?
5. How books as historical sources help us ?
6. Write down in brief about the historical buildings.
7. How newspapers, magazines and pamphlets are helpful in writing history.
8. Write a note on the govt. document.

(B) Fill in the blanks :

1. In Europe the Modern Period began in the century.
2. There was period in India in the 16th century.
3. Pathans and Rajputs etc. new powers emerged in the 18th century.

(C) Write 'True' or 'False' in the brackets given after each statement :

1. There were many social evils prevalent in India in the 18th Century
2. Western ideas enlightened the Indians along with western education and literature.
3. In India the Mughal Empire was more powerful in the 18th century.

Activity :

1. Write main sources of Modern Indian history on a chart with a picture of each source and paste it on the wall of your class room.



Chapter 8 THE ESTABLISHMENT OF EAST INDIA COMPANY

Trade

Since ancient times India had trade relations with European countries. There were three major trade routes between Indian and Europe. Which in the 15th century Turks established their control over western Asian and Southern-Eastern European countries. The European countries started searching for the new sea routes to India for trading with after the closing down of the ancient routes. First of all Vasco-De-Gama a portuguese Captain, reached Calicut in India on 27th May, 1498 AD. Following which the portuguese started trading with India.



Vasco-De-Gama

Trade Wars

After the Portuguese, Dutch, British and French also formed their trade relations and gradually they established their settlements in India. The race for trade with Indian among them led to the wars. The Portuguese settlements in India were in Goa, Daman, Salsette, Bassein, Mumbai and Hugali. Dutch had their settlements in Cochin, Surat, Nagapattam, Pulikat, Chinsura. Britishers had in Surat, Ahmadabad, Bharuch, Agra, Mumbai and Calcutta. French settlements were in Pondicherry, chandernagar and Karaikal With the passage of time, in order to establish their hold on these settlements, there began an internal struggle among these four European Powers. By the 17th Century the influence of Portuguese and Dutch declined and the British and French powers started a struggle to control the European Trade between these two powers. Finally the British emerged Victorians.

British East India Company

The British merchants group named Merchant Adventures founded the East India Company to trade with India on 31st December 1600 AD. The British Queen Elizabeth I granted the trade privileges of 15 years to trade with India. In 1615 A.D. the

representative of the Company Sir Thomas Roe became successful in securing trade privileges from Jahangir. Britishers established their trade settlements in Surat, Ahmadabad, Broach and Agra. In 1640 A.D. Britishers established its settlements in Madras (Chennai). In 1690 A.D. Britishers established settlement in Calcutta (Kolkatta) and constructed the first fort named Fort Williams. In 1717, British East India Company got the free trade privileges for 3000 Rs. annual from the Mughal Emperor Farrkhsiyar in Bengal. Bihar and Orissa. British imported in India lead, mercury and clothes and exported from India cotton clothes and silk clothes, spices, indigo and opium Gradually, the Britishers started interfering in the Indian affairs and became the paramount power in India.

French East India Company

After the establishment of British East India Company in 1664 AD French established a trading company. Company established its settlements in chander nagar, Mahi and Karaikal. Under the leadership of the Governors Duma and Dupleix the French Company progressed. To stop the increasing influence of the French Company Britishers started war with French.



Dupleix

Anglo-French Rivalry

To establish their supremacy over trade and politics there started a struggle between French and Britishers. In Europe also the French and Britishers were rivals. This struggle led to three Carnatic wars. The Britishers got victorious in these wars. The detail explanation of three wars is given below :

First Carnatic War 1746-48 : In 1740 AD over the question of succession of Austria, there started a war between Britishers and French in Europe, As a result of this the first Carnatic war started in India between these powers.

In 1746 AD in India French Governor Dupleix occupied Madras, a settlement of Britishers which was situated in Carnatic state. The Nawab of Carnatic Anwar-ud-din asked the French to return Madras to Britishers. But the French refused to do so.

Because of this Britishers tried to control Pondicherry but were unsuccessful. As soon as the Austrian war in Europe ended, the war in India also came to an end.

Second Carnatic War : After the first war of Carnatic the Britishers and French helped each others rival in the war of succession of Carnatic and Hyderabad because of this second Carnatic war was fought between French and Britishers.

In 1748 AD Assif Shah the Nizam of Hyderabad died. War for succession started between his son Nasir Jung and grandson Muzaffer Jung. In this war Britishers helped Nasir Jung and French helped Muzaffer Jung. In this way Chanda Sahib with the help of French became the Nawab of Carnatic after over throwing Nawab Anwar-ud-din. In 1751 AD when Muzaffer Jung died then French made Salabat Jung the Nawab of Hyderabad. He gave away some of the territories of Northern Sarkar to the French. During this time Robert Clive a British officer attacked the capital of Carnatic. Chanda Sahib we killed, and Mohammad Ali was made the Nawab of Carnatic. Dupleix was called back to Franch and in his place Godeher was appointed as a Governor.



Robert Clive

Third Carnatic War : In 1756 AD seven year was brokeout in Europe between England and France. Therefore in India too war broke out between these two powers. The France government sent Count-de Lally to end the British power in India. But he failed. In 1763 AD the treaty of Pairs was signed between British and French in Europe, with this the war came to an end. As a result war which was going on in India also came to an end. According to the treaty, the settlements of Pondicherry and Mahi were returned to the French, But they were not allowed the fortification of these settlements. They could only trade now. So in this way the French influence in India came to an end and the paramountcy of Britishers company was established.

The Conquest of Bengal By Britishers

The Britishers were trading with Bengal for a long time. In 1717 AD the Mughal Emperor gave Britishers the privilege to free trade in Bengal. Bihar and Orissa by paying 3000 Rs. annual. But they were not paying any taxes on their private trade.

Siraj-ud-Daulah could not tolerate this because it was a great loss to the state treasury. In 1756 AD Siraj-ud-Daulah became the Nawab of Bengal. Bengal was, very important from the trading point of view. So the British and French started the fortification in Calcutta. Siraj-ud-Daulah could not tolerate this because this could arise a danger to his rule. So he tried to stop Britishers and French against fortification. The British refused to accept in but the French accepted the terms of Siraj-ud-Daulah.

The French accepted the term of Siraj-ud-Daulah and Britishers refused to do so. By getting angry over this Siraj-ud-Daulah with the help of his army occupied the settlements of the Britishers in Calcutta (Kolkatta). After sometime the Britishers again occupied control over their settlements Siraj-ud-Daulah got enraged and moved forward to turn the Britishers out of Calcutta.

Battle of Plassey (1757 AD)

The battle of Plassey was fought between Siraj-ud-Daulah and Britishers. On 23rd June, 1757 AD, at the place named Plassey. Robert Clive led the British forces. Mir Jaffer and Rai Durlabh, who were leading the major part of the Nawab's army, did not participate in the battle. Because these traitors hatched a conspiracy against Nawab with the Britishers. The Nawab with his army faced the enemy bravely but was defeated in the end. The Britishers made him prisoner and later on he was killed. Clive put Mir Jaffer on the throne of Bengal. The real power was in the hands of British Governor Clive, but still the Britishers were not happy. The Britishers removed Mir Jaffer and put Mir Qasim on the throne.



Siraj-ud-Daulah

After becoming Nawab, Mir Qasim tried to get himself free from the influence of Britishers. He made Mungher his capital in place of Murshidabad. He removed those officers from his court who were loyal to Britishers. To give his soldiers training in modern techniques of war, he appointed European Officers. He removed the taxes imposed on Indian traders so that the Indian and Britishers could trade under uniform rules. The Britishers suffered due to it and declared war against Nawab. The Britishers defeated the Nawab in Katwaha, Giria, Suti and Udainala places in 1763 A.D. Mir Qasim, field to Avadh from Bengal.

Battle of Buxar (1764 AD)

Mir Qasim demanded military help from the Nawab of Avadh against Britishers. At this time Mughal Emperor Shah Alam II was also in Avadh. The armies of Mir Quasim, Siraj-ud-Daulah and Shah Alam II reached in the field of Buxar. On the other side major Munro with his army also reached Buxar. On 23rd Oct. 1764 AD a fierce battle was fought between both forces. In this battle Britishers got victorious, Siraj-ud-Daulah and Shah Alam II signed a treaty with the Britishers and Mir Quasim fled from the Battle field. A treaty of Allahabad was signed among Britishers, Siraj-ud-Daulah and Shah Alam in 1765 AD. According to this treaty the territory of Awadh was given back to Siraj-ud-Daulah for Rs. 50 lakhs. The company got the right to free-trade in Awadh. The Nawab of Awadh accepted to keep the British Army and to bear its expenses. The Mughal Emperor Shah Alam was given pension of Rs. 26 lakhs annul. The areas of Kara and Allahabad were taken from the Nawab of Awadh and were given to Shah Alam. Shah Alam gave Britishers the Diwani (right to collect the taxes) of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa. Mir Jaffer was again made the Nawab of Bengal by replacing Mir Qasim.

Dual Administration System in Bengal

After the victories of Plassey and Buxar the East Indian Company became the real ruler of Bengal. Military and Finance department came under its control. Nawab was given the responsibility to run the civil administration which is called dual administration system. Britishers appointed two Deputy Nawabs named Muhammad Rajah Khan and Raja Shitab Rai.

In 1772 AD the dual administration was abolished. Direct rule of the company established over Bengal. The new Governor General Warren Hastings started extending the British Empire over India.

Expansion of British Empire

In India for the expansion and consolidation of British Empire the Governor Generals of East India Company-Warren Hastings, Lord Wellesley, Lord Hastings and Lord Dalhousie made an important contribution.

1. Expansion Through Wars and Diplomacy : Under Lord Clive, Warren Hastings, Cornwallis and Sir John Shore the British Empire was founded and made early development only. But in the times of three Governor Generals of the Company-Lord Wellesley, Lord Hastings and Lord Dalhousie (1798-1857) it expanded to a great extent.

Expansion Through Subsidiary Alliance : Lord Wellesely introduced the subsidiary alliance for the expansion of British Empire. He signed a treaty with the Nizam of Hyderabad, the Nawab of Avadh and many native rulers under this system. This treaty was a type of an agreement. The British Government used to protect the subsidiary state from internal and external aggressions. In lieu of this the agreed state had to accept some of the conditions mentioned below.

1. The British government had control over the external affairs of the state.
2. The ruler of that state had to keep a British resident.
3. The ruler of that state was not allowed to have relations with any foreign power.
4. The state could not declare war against the other state without the permission of the Britishers.

Expansion Through Wars

Anglo-Mysore Wars (1766-99) : In 1761 Hyder Ali founded the independent state of Mysore. To crush the power of Hyder Ali the Britishers in 1766 AD signed a treaty with Marathas and Nizam. So from 1767 AD to 1769 AD the first Mysore war was fought between Hyder Ali and British in which Hyder Ali won the battle. The British had to sign a treaty with him. According to this treaty they promised to help Hyder Ali against Marathas. But in 1771 AD when Marathas attacked Hyder Ali the Britishers did not help him. On the other hand they joined hands with Hyder Ali's enemies Marathas and Nizam of Hyderabad, Hyder Ali could not tolerate this. In 1780 A.D. second Mysore war began between both. During this battle, Hyder Ali died in 1782.

Tipu Sultan : After the death of Hyder Ali Tipu Sultan became the new sultan of Mysore. At that time second battle of Mysore was being fought with the British. Tipu Sultan continued the battle. Britishers were forced to sign a Treaty of Bangalore with him in 1784 A.D. After this, in 1799 AD, Britishers again attacked Mysore. Tipu Sultan died while fighting with British near Srirangapatam. British captured many areas of Mysore and the rest of the areas were given to Kesav Rao of the old Mysore dynasty. He accepted the terms of subsidiary alliance.



Tipu Sultan

Anglo-Maratha War (1775-1818 AD) In 1802 AD, Lord Wellesely signed a treaty with Peshwa Baji Rao II in Basseins. So power of Marathas declined.

In 1802 AD Maratha Chief Bhonsle was defeated in the second British-Maratha War. In 1803 he signed a treaty of Deogaon with the Britishers and they got the areas of Cuttak and Balasore. In this battle Britishers defeated Maratha Chief Sindhia and signed

Treaty of Surji Arjangaon under which they got the areas of Ahmadnagar, Bharuch and the area between Ganga and Yamuna. Lord Wellesely captured Indore, the capital of Jaswant Rao Holkar. In 1805 Lord Wellesely was called back to England. After that Lord Carnwallis signed subsidiary alliance with Maratha Chief Holkar, Sindhia and Bhonsle.

Anglo-Gorkha War (1814-1816 A.D.) The Gorkhas occupied some British territories of the border areas. So in 1815 AD Hastings under David Ochterlony sent a huge army against Gorkhas, Gorkhas were defeated in this battle. The Gorkhas had to give their many areas and Nepal government accepted to keep a British resident in Kathmandu.

To Annex the Other State During Lord Hastings governorship¹⁹ Princely States of Rajasthan accepted British Sovereignty. Among these the important ones were Jodhpur, Jaipur, Udaipur, Bikaner etc. In this way, Lord Hastings expanded the British Empire.

Expansion of the British Empire from 1823-1848 A.D.

Time-Line

Lord Amherst 1823-1828 AD

First Anglo-Burmese war (1824-26 AD)

Lord William Bentinck 1828-1835 AD

In 1832 AD a subsidiary alliance was signed with the Amirs of Sindh.

Lord Auckland 1836-1842 AD

In 1839 AD signed a subsidiary alliance with the Amirs of Sindh.

Lord Allenbrow 1842-1844 AD

In 1843 AD Charles Napier annexed Sindh.

Lord Hardinge 1844-1848 AD

The Sikhs were defeated in the First Anglo-Sikh war (1845-46).

Expansion of British Empire Under Lord Dalhousie (1848-56 A.D.)

To expand the British Empire Lord Dalhousie adopted different methods.

1. Expansion through wars.
2. Doctrine of Lapse.
3. On the basis of mal-administration.
4. By discontinuing titles and pensions.

(A) Expansion through Wars

1. In 1848 AD, Governor-General Lord Dalhousie took advantage of the rivalry of Moolraj and Chattar Singh. In this war, British got victorious. So on March 29th 1848 AD, Lord Dalhousie annexed Punjab to the British Empire.
2. In 1850 AD, Lord Dalhousie attacked Sikkim and annexed to the British Empire.
3. In 1852 AD, In Second Anglo - Burmese war Lord Dalhousie annexed the areas of Prom and Pegu to the British Empire.

(B) The Doctrine of Lapse

Lord Dalhousie adopted the Doctrine of Lapse to annex the Indian states to the British Empire. According to this policy those rulers who has no biological heir, they were not allowed to adopt a son. After the death of such a ruler his state was merged with the British Empire. According to this policy, Lord Dalhousie annexed Satara, Sambhalpur, Udaipur and Jhansi etc. in the British Empire.

(C) Annexation on the basis of Mal-Administration

In 1856 A.D. Lord Dalhousie by alleging mal-administration annexed Avadh to the British empire.

(D) Annexation By ending Titles and Pensions

Lord Dalhousie annexed to British Empire by stopping the titles and pensions of the rules of Karnataka, Poona, Tanjore and Surat.

POINTS TO REMEMBER

1. As a result of a new sea routes to India first of all Vasco-de-Gama a Portuguese Captain, reached Calicut in India on 27th May, 1498 AD.
2. (i) The Portuguese settlements in India were in Goa, Daman, Salsette, Bassein, Mumbai and Hoogali.
(ii) Dutch had their settlements in Cochin, Surat, Nagapattam, Pulicat, Chinsura.
(iii) French settlements were in Pondicherry, Chandarnagar and Karaikal.
(iv) British had settlements in Surat, Ahmadabad, Bharuch, Agra, Bombay and Calcutta.
3. British East India Company established on 31st December 1600 AD in India.
4. In 1615 AD a representative of the British East India Company Sir Thomas Rao succeed in securing trade privileges from Jahangir a Mughal Emperor.
5. In 1717 AD British East India Company got the free trade privileges from the Mughal Emperor Farrukhsiyar in Bengal.
6. The battle of Plassey was fought between Siraj-ud-Daula and Britishers on 23th June, 1757 AD.
7. The battle of Buxar was fought between Britishers and Siraj-ud-Daula on 23th Oct. 1764 AD.



(A) Answer the following questions :

1. Who was the first Portuguese to reach India ?
2. Write down the names of the four Portuguese settlements.
3. Where did the Dutch established their colonies in India ?
4. When and from which Mughal emperor did the British get the privilege to free trade?
5. Among which two European companies was the first Carnatic war fought and who got the victory ?
6. When and among whom was the battle of Plassey fought ?
7. When and among whom was the battle of Buxar fought ?

8. Write down a note on the Battle of Plassey.
9. Write down a note on the Dual system in Bengal.
10. Write a note on 'Policy of lapse.'

(B) Write 'True' or 'False' in brackets given after each statement :

1. First of all Vasco-De-Gama a Portuguese Captain, reached Calicut in India on 27th May, 1498 AD.
2. Two Carnatic wars were fought between the Britishers and French.
3. During the battle of Plassey with the Britishers, Mir Jaffer was the Nawab of Bengal.

(C) Fill in the Blanks :

1. After the battle of a treaty of Allahabad was signed among the British, Siraj-ud-Daula and Shah Lam in 1765 AD.
2. In 1772 AD the was abolished in Bengal.
3. Lord Wellesely introduced the system for expansion of the British Empire.

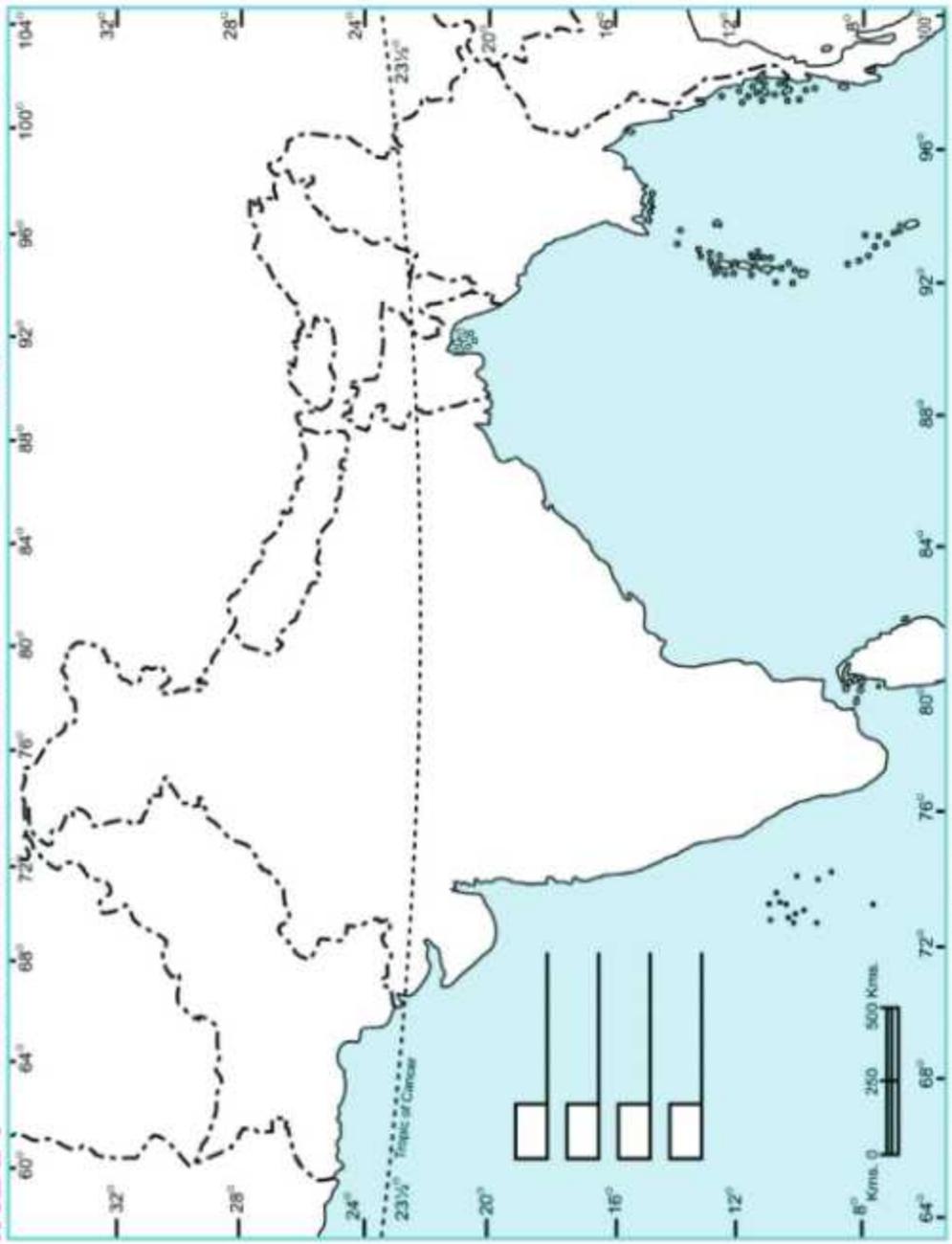
Activity :

Make a list on a chart of methods adopted by the Lord Dalhousie for the expansion of British Empire and which states were annexed in this empire by the Lord Dalhousie ?



INDIA – PHYSICAL AND ADJACENT COUNTRIES

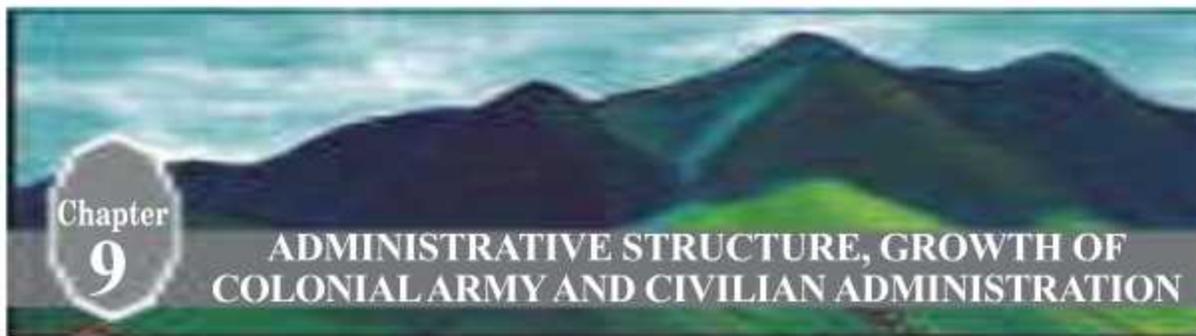
भारत – प्राकृतिक और पड़ोसी देश



1. Based upon Survey of India Map with the permission of the Surveyor General of India.
2. The territorial waters of India extend into the sea to a distance of twelve nautical miles measured from the appropriate baseline.
3. The maritime boundaries between Uttar Pradesh & Uttarakhand, Bihar & Jharkhand, Madhya Pradesh & Chhattisgarh have not been verified by the Government concerned.
4. The boundary of Nagaland shown on this map is as interpreted from the North-Eastern Area (Reorganisation) Act, 1951, but has yet to be settled.
5. The External Boundary and road-line of India shown on this map agree with the Road/Master copy, verified by the Survey of India, Dehradun. (Letter No. TS 89102-A/3/71 Dated 5/5/2003).
6. The administrative boundaries of Chandigarh, Jammu and Punjab are at Chandigarh.

© Government of India, Copyright 2011

Name Class Rolf No. Teacher Signature



Earlier British came to India for trade and their main purpose was to get maximum profit. But they won over many Indian territories. To run the administration of these territories, they adopted many policies, the objectives of which were to protect the British interest in Indian administrative composition.

Administrative Structure :-

As the trade of the East India Company developed, a need was felt to organize its legal, administrative and bureaucratic aspects also. Civil Service, Police and Army were the essentials for the survival of the British Empire in India

Constitutional Changes

1. The Regulation Act of 1773 AD : In 1773 AD, the regulating act was passed by the British Parliament to inquire into the working of the East India Company. According to this act the British Parliament got the right to inspect the working of the company in India. It had the right to take decision by majority over the matters related with administration. The Governor General and his Council had the right to control the Bombay (Mumbai) and Madras (Chennai) government over the matters related with war, peace, political treaties alliances etc.

2. Pitt's India Act 1784 AD : In 1784 AD, the Parliament of England passed Pitt's India Act. According to this act to control the company's civil military and financial matters a board of control was established in England. It had 6 members. According to the act the trade system was separated from political system. The number of the Governor General in Council was reduced from 4 to 3. The Bombay and Madras Governors were fully under the control of Governor-General.

3. Charter Act of 1833 AD : According to this act the Company was asked to leave all the work related with trade so that it could pay its full attention to administration. The Bengal Governor General and Council were now named as Governor General of India and Council of India respectively. A law member was included in the Governor-General's Council to make laws for the country. In this way the presidencies were debarred from the right to make laws. In this way the Central Government became very powerful.

4. Charter Act - 1853 AD : According to the Charter Act of 1853 AD, legislature was established by separating from executive. It had total 12 members. Through this act the interference of the central government increased in company's affairs. Now it could take over the rule of India from the company into its own hands.

Administrative Organisation : The Indian administration was run by four institutions which are mentioned below :

1. Civil Services
2. Army
3. Police
4. Judiciary

1. Civil Services : The credit of starting the Civil services in India goes to Lord Cornwallis. He increased the salaries of the Civil Service officers to put an end to bribery. Officers were banned against private trade and accepting gifts from Indians. He appointed only Europeans on the higher posts. In 1806, Lord William opened a college in Helliberry in England, where newly appointed civil officers were given training before sending them to India. According to the charter act of 1833 AD, the Indians would not be debarred from the government jobs on the basis of religion, caste and colour. But still Indians were not appointed on higher posts.



Lord Cornwallis

In 1853 AD the appointments in the civil services were based on competitive examinations which were conducted in England. The medium of Examination was English. The maximum age limit was fixed to 22 years which in 1864 was refixed 21 year and in 19 years in 1876 AD. An Indian named Satinder Nath Tagore become successful in clearing civil services examination in 1863 AD.

Later, Indian demand to increase the age limit and to establish centre for examination in Indian's instead of England, the Viceroy, Lord Ripon, supported this demand but the secretary of the state did not accept the demand.

In 1886 AD Viceroy Lord Ripon appointed a Public Service Commission of 15 members. This commission recommended that the civil services should be divided into three parts.

1. Imperial or Indian civil services examination which should be conducted in England.
2. Provincial services exams. which should be conducted in differnt provinces.
3. Professional service's commission recommended to increase the age from 19 to 23 to Indians.

In 1892 AD Indian Government accepted these recommendations.

In 1918 AD Montague Chemsford recommended that 33% Indian should be recruited in Indian Civil Services and gradually this number should be increased. This report was implemented by the Indian Government act of 1919 AD.

In 1923 AD, Lee Commission recommended for Central Public Services Commission and such a commission in the provinces also. So, in 1926 AD Central Public Service Commission and in 1955 some Provincial Public Service Commissions were established.

Although in the British rule in the Indian Civil Services. Indians were appointed in large numbers but still, mostly English officers were appointed on higher posts. The main aim of this was to serve the British interests in India not the welfare of the people.

2. Army : Army had a great contribution in the establishment and expansion of British rule in India. In 1856 AD the number of Indians in the army was 2,33,000 and that of Europeans was only 45,322. Indian soliders were given less salaries and allowances than English soldiers. They could be promoted only to post of subedar. English officials used to treat Indian soldiers very badly. This is why Indian soldiers revolted against Britishers in 1857 AD.

After the revolt of 1857 AD, important changes were made in the Indian army in 1858 AD.

1. The number of English soliders was increased.
2. Only English were appointed in artillery. Sikhs and Gorkhas were recruited in the army instead of Brahamans of U.P. The ratio of Europeans and Indians in the army was made 2:1. The Chief Commander was made the member of Governor General's Council Troops were established on the basis of religion and caste, so that unity among the soldiers could not emerged and to make possibility of revolt less.

Police : To establish law and order Lord cornwallis reformed the police department and Districts Captains were appointed the districts were further divided into thanas. Every thana was under a Daroga. The Police Captain used to check the work of the Daroga. Watchmen were appointed to look after the villages. Even in the police department, Indians were not appointed on high posts. Their salaries were less than the British. The behaviour of the police employees was not good with the Indians.

Why did cornwallis make reforms in the police department?

4. Judicial System : The important contribution of the British was to established a Judicial system and to enact a written law. Warren Hastings established Diwani and Criminal Courts in districts. By the Regulating act of 1773 AD, a supreme court was

established in Calcutta. To guide the judges, a book named 'Code of Cornwallis' was prepared by Cornwallis.

In 1832 A.D. Lord William Bentick started jury system in Bengal. In the charter act of 1833 AD, an Indian Law Commission was established to compile the laws. The Governor General was given the right to make all laws. A rule of law was established in the whole empire. According to it, all Indians were treated equal without any discrimination on the basis of religion or caste. But such like other civil services Indian were not treated at par with Europeans. They were debarred from other privileges. For example the Indian judges had no right to give verdict over the cases related with Europeans. In 1833 AD, Lord Ripon tried to give such equal rights to the Indian judges but remained unsuccessful.

POINTS TO REMEMBER

1. According to the Regulating Act of 1773 AD, Pitt's India Act 1784 AD and review Charter Act of 1833 AD and 1853 AD the British Empire in India came under the Central power and gradually British parliament could take over the rule of India from the company in its own hands.
2. The credit to introduce the Civil Services in India goes to Lord Cornwallis. In India only Europeans were appointed on the higher posts.
3. Lord Cornwallis composed a book named 'Code of Cornwallis'. In 1773, a Supreme Court was established in Calcutta.



(A) Write down the answer of the following questions :

1. When and which act was passed to check the working of the East India company?
2. When and under which act Board of Central was established?
3. Who was the founder of Civil Services in India ?
4. Who was the first Indian to have passed the examination of the Indian Civil Services ?
5. Which was the highest post which was given to the Indian Sepoy ?
6. Which Governor-General made improvements in the police department and why ?

7. What do you mean by Regulatory Act.
8. Write a note on Pitt's India Act.
9. Which changes were made in the army after 1858 AD ?
10. Write a note on judicial system.

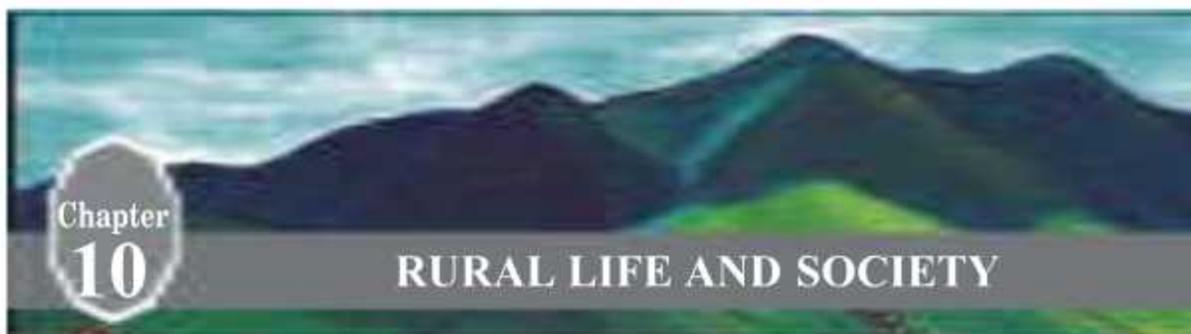
(B) Fill in the Blanks :

1. In 1886 AD Lord appointed a Public Service Commission of 15 members.
2. The ratio of Europeans and Indians was 2:1 in the army after the revolt of AD.
3. In 1773 AD according the Regulating Act a Supreme Court was established in

(C) Write True or False for each statement :

1. The objective of British policies was to protect the British interests in India.
2. During the regin of Cornwallis in India each Thana was under a Daroga.
3. In 1773 AD according the Regulating Act Supreme Court was established in Calcutta.





During British rule many changes occurred in the economic field in India. The policies which Britishers adopted ruined the Indian industry because they started those new industries which served their selfish purposes. British adopted new land revenue policies such as Permanent Settlement, Ryatwari and Mahalwari systems in India.

Land Revenue Policies of the British

The main purpose of the land revenue policies of the British was to extract as much money as possible. To achieve this purpose British adopted various land revenue policies. In 1765 AD British East India Company got the Diwani of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa but the work of land revenue collection was given to collectors.

1. Bidding System or Ijaredari : In 1765 AD, Warren Hastings made an arrangement to collect the land revenue for five years. Under this system, right to collection was given to the highest bidder. In 1777 AD, he made it for one year instead of five years. The bidders used to exploit the farmers as much as possible. So keeping this in his mind, in 1793 AD Lord Cornwallis introduced the Permanent Settlement in Bengal and Bihar provinces.

2. Permanent Settlement : In 1793 AD Lord Cornwallis introduced Permanent Settlement in Bengal. Later, it was extended to Bihar, Orissa, Banaras and Northern India also. According to this system, landlords were made the land owners of the land. The land revenue was fixed which the zamindars deposited in the treasury. If because of any reason the zamindars failed to deposit the fixed revenue, government used to sell some part of the their land to realize revenue. The zamindars had the right to collect the land revenue from the people in any way they wanted.

The Demerits of the Permanent Settlement : There were many demerits in this system.

1. The zamindars used to commit atrocities on the farmers.
2. Which the income of the company's government was fixed, but the expenditure started increasing with the passage of the time so the company was in loss.

3. The burden of taxes increased on the non-agriculturalist class of other occupations.

4. The Government had no direct contact with the farmers.

5. This permanent settlement made the zamindars lethargic and lead a life of luxury.

3. Ryatwari System : To remove the demerits of the permanent settlement, Lord Thomas Munero, a British officer introduced ryatwari settlement in Madras and Mumbai in 1820 AD. In this system the government decided to collect the land revenue directly from the farmers. Farmers were made owners of the land and their land revenue was fixed in this system.

Demerits of Ryatwari System : Under Ryotwari system, the government now exploited the farmers instead of zamindars. Most of the produce of the farmers was taken as land revenue. Many poor farmers had to mortgage their lands and take debt from the money lenders to pay the land revenue to the government.

4. Mahalwari System : To remove the demerits of Ryatwari system the Mahalwari system was introduced in Uttar Pradesh, Punjab and some territories of Madhya Pradesh. This system was made with the whole community of the village. According to this system land revenue was paid to government by the whole village community. This system was made for a longer period. It was believed to be the best because this system had merits of both Permanent settlement and Ryatwari system. The main defect of this system was that people had to pay heavy land revenue.

The Effects of the Land-Revenue Policies of the Britishers

Atrocities were committed on the farmers due to the land revenue policies adopted by the Britishers. The Zamindars exploited the farmers in those regions where permanent or non-permanent settlements were introduced. They used to give a fixed land revenue to the government and became the masters of the land but they used to collect the revenue from the farmers according to their own wishes. The zamindars were not checked by the government against the exploitation of the farmers and tillers. The government itself also exploited the farmers in those areas where Ryatwari and Mahalwari settlement was introduced. Even in these areas 1/3 to 1/2 of the total production was taken as land revenue and every year this rate of the land revenue was increased so the farmers became poor. Besides this, land become private property so gradually it started getting divided among the members of the family. According to the land-revenue policies farmers had to deposit tax under any circumstance, regardless of there is flood, drought or any other natural calamity. Under these circumstances

the farmers had to mortgage their land to the money lenders to pay the taxes. This made the economic condition of the farmers even worse.

Commercialization of the Agriculture

Before the establishment of the British rule, the main occupation of the Indian people was agriculture. Agriculture fulfilled the needs of the people. Besides farmers in every village, there were potters, weavers, cobblers, blacksmiths, hair dressers, washermen. All these people together used to fulfil the needs of the village. But after the establishment of the British rule in India the self-sufficiency of the village got disturbed. According to the land revenue policies of the British, farmers had to pay fixed land revenue on fixed time. Now the farmers used to grow crops to sell in the market rather than to fulfil the needs of the village. The main purpose was to get maximum money so that they could pay the government land revenue on fixed time and to pay the loan to the money lender. So there began the commercialization of agriculture.

Now the farmers started growing wheat, cotton, oil seeds, sugarcane and jute, as these crops were in great demand in the market. By selling these crops farmers started getting better income. There was a great demand of raw material in England after the Industrialization. So British started the commercialization of agriculture which was started in Punjab, Bengal, Gujarat and Bihar.

The Effects of Commercialization of Agriculture

Benefits : It was because of the commercialization of agriculture that many new types of crops were grown and production increased. As a result, the means of transportation were also developed. Therefore, the farmers easily reached in the market. They could buy clothes and other necessary things from the city-market on cheap-rates. The vision of the farmers got broadened by their contact with the cities. As a result, gradually national consciousness started arising.

Losses : If on one hand the farmers benefited by the commercialization of agriculture on the other hand there were losses also. The farmers used to cultivate through traditional means but in the market they had to compete with the America, Australia and European crops, which were grown through machines. That is why the farmers could not be benefited more. Besides this, the farmers had to sell their crops in market through money lenders who used to take the maximum profit and the farmers were not given full value of their crops.

Revolt by the Farmers

The Britishers implemented different land-revenue policies in the conquered areas, according to which the farmers had to pay more land revenue so they were creditors to the money-lenders. According to Permanent Settlement, Britishers introduced the new sale law. The zamindars who were not depositing land-revenue in the government treasury by the 31st March his land was sold to the other zamindar. Besides this the Britishers confiscated many lands and again imposed land tax on those lands which were given to the zamindars by the emperor as a grant. The land tax was increased than before. The govt. was quite strict while collecting land-revenue. Because of this the condition of the farmers got deteriorate. As a result they started revolt against Britishers.

In 1849 AD, in different parts of Punjab like Patiala and Rawalpindi (Pakistan) farmers revolted.

Indigo Revolt : The Indigo cultivators also revolted against the increased tax on Indigo. In 1858 AD and 1860 AD, the revolt spread in large parts of Bengal and Bihar. The Britishers forced the cultivators to grow indigo by giving them warnings but the cultivators refused to do so. But when they were forced, cultivators started attacking and looting factories of the British planters. All the efforts to control the cultivators failed. In 1866-68 AD, a revolt in champaran (Bihar) occurred. This indigo revolt continued till when in the early 20th century Mohandas Karamchand Gandhi extended his support in favour of indigo cultivators.

POINTS TO REMEMBER

1. Permanent Settlement in 1793 A.D., Ryatwari System in 1820 AD and Mahalwari System led same effects for long time. The farmers became debtors and deprived from the land due to increase in land revenue and grant the land revenue during the natural calamities.
2. The farmers started growing wheat, cotton, oil seeds, sugarcane, jute due to commercialization of the agriculture. These crops were used as raw material in the industries of England and these crops were brought at less price from the Indian farmers.
3. The farmers revolted against the policies of British at different places.
4. During the 1858-1860 A.D. the Indigo producers also revolted at different places against the British Government.

Exercises

(A) Answer the following questions :

1. When, where and by whom was the Permanent Settlement system started ?
2. When, where and by whom was the Ryatwari system introduced?
3. In which three areas Mahalwari system implemented ?
4. How did the commercialization of agriculture start ?
5. Which were the commercial crops ?
6. Mention two merits of commercialization of agriculture.
7. Mention two demerits of commercialization of agriculture.
8. What was Permanent Settlement. What were the economic effects of this system ?
9. Write a note on Indigo-revolt.

(B) Fill in the Blanks :

1. The contractors the farmers.
2. The became land owners due to Permanent Settlement.
3. Zimidars committed with the farmers.
4. was the main occupation of the Indians before the British rule.

(C) Write 'True' or 'False' in the brackets given after each statement :

1. Due to British rule self-sufficiency of the village economy got much benefit in India.
2. Mahalwari System was made with whole community of the village.
3. The Britishers implemented sale rule according to the Permanent Settlement in Bengal.

(D) Match the Words :

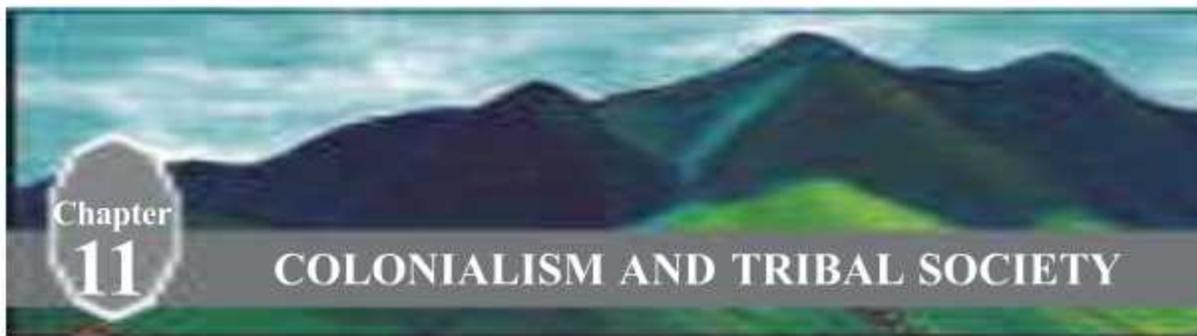
(A)

1. Waran Hastings
2. Lord Cornwallis
3. Thomas Munro

(B)

- Permanent Settlement
Ryatwari System
Ijaredari(Bidding System)



A banner for Chapter 11, 'Colonialism and Tribal Society'. It features a landscape with green hills and mountains under a blue sky. The text 'Chapter 11' is in a white oval on the left, and 'COLONIALISM AND TRIBAL SOCIETY' is in white capital letters on a dark grey background on the right.

Chapter 11 COLONIALISM AND TRIBAL SOCIETY

Tribal Society : Tribal society is an important part of the Indian population. According to the census of 2011 AD their population was 10, 42, 81, 034 (App. 160 million). Most of the tribes used to live in Rajasthan, Gujarat, Bihar, Orissa and Madhya Pradesh. Besides these tribal people also live in smaller states and union territories like Sikkim, Goa, Mizoram, Dadra Nagar Haveli and Lakshdweep. Among them majority belong to the following tribes like Gond, Bheel, Santhal, Mizo etc. Among them Gonds are in majority. Besides them other minority tribes are also there.

During British rule, many European and Indian writers tried to give information about life, the economic condition and society of tribes. Among these tribal people 63% lives in hilly and forest area, 2.2% lives in island, 1.6% in semi-regions. Rest of them live in the rural and urban areas. These people live in one or two rooms huts which are



Tribal People

often constructed unplanned. These huts are in two or four lines facing each other. These are surrounded by clusters. These people domesticate sheep and goats. These people depend on local natural and physical means. Some of the other occupations like hunting, food gathering, fishing, ploughing are popular among them.

The basic unit among tribal people is family, where women play an important role in economic and cultural life. The main jobs of women are preparing food, collection of wood, dusting washing clothes. They also help to men in the agricultural work like levelling the fields, sowing the seeds, and in harvesting. The main job of the male is cutting down the wood, levelling the fields and ploughing etc. Because tribal women help the man in the economic sphere that is why men keep more than one wife. That is why polygamy is popular among tribal society.

Changes in Tribal Society and its Economic Condition in 19th Century

In the 19th century during British rule maximum tribal people were poor. The fast expanding British Empire effected the every aspect of the life of tribal people. The traditional social and economic structure was changed during British rule. Its main effect was on the social and economic condition of the tribal people. For their selfish economic interest the British government started the commercialization of the agriculture. The Britishers occupied the tribal land for the opium and indigo agriculture. Because of this tribal people started working as labourers. They were paid less. Gradually they started taking loans to pay the credits so they were ruined economically.

The tribal people did not approve these social and economic changes. They were fully against the new arrangements of British rule.

Revolt by the Tribal People

Because of the above mentioned causes the tribal people revolted against the Britishers in different part of the country. Bheel people in Madhya Pradesh, Munda in Bihar, Gond in Orissa, Khasi in Meghalaya and Santhal in Bihar and Bengal strongly revolted.

Revolts by the Tribal People in Norther-Eastern Regions : In the Northerin-Eastern region the first revolt was by the Khasi people. The Khasi had control over the area ranging from jaintiya hills to Garo hills in western area. Tirut Singh was the leader of this tribe. Under his leadership the khasi wanted to throw the foreigners out of their area. On May 5, 1829 A.D. the khasi with the help of the Garo killed many Europeans and Bengalis. They set fire to the European settlements. Tirut Singh wanted to free Bhots and Singphos from the foreign administration. That is why he gave a tough time to the British rule with the help of his 10,000 men. On the other hand British army set fire to the khasis villages one after the other. At last in 1833AD, Tirut Singh surrendered before British army.

Make a list of tribes which revolted against the Britishers.

When the British soldiers were facing the revolt of Khasis another tribe Singphos revolted. Now the people of Khasis and Singphos called upon the other tribes like Khamtis, Garo, Naga etc. to revolt. They attacked British army in Assam and killed many Britishers. But they could not compete with the modern arms of the Britishers and they had to surrender.

In 1839 AD, again the Singpho tribal people again revolted against Britishers and they killed the ambassador Colonel White and many Britishers. In 1844 AD another Northern western tribe Naga revolted against Britishers. This revolt continued for 2 to 3 years. In the hilly areas of Manipur Kuki people revolted against Britishers in 1826, 1844 and in 1849 AD. They killed many British officials. These Kuki people were 7000 in numbers. At last in 1850 AD Britishers calmed down the revolt by defeating the Kukis.

Why did the tribes revolt in Northern-Eastern regions ?

The Tribal Revolts of Chhota Nagpur area and the Bravery of the Birsa Munda

In 1820 for the first time in the Chhota Nagpur area of the people of Kaul tribe revolted against the Britishers. Because they could not tolerate the expansion of British rule in their area. During this revolt they set many villages on fire and large number of people were killed. So they surrendered in 1827 AD before Britishers.

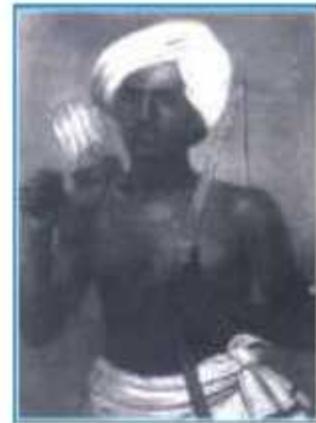
Then in 1830-31 the people of Munda tribes started their revolt against Britishers. The people of the Kol tribe also joined the revolt. Immediately this revolt spread to the areas of Ranchi, Hazari bagh, Palamu and Manbhum area. The military killed nearly 1000 revolters, but the military could not control the revolt. At last after many military operations, this revolt was suppressed in 1832 A.D. But the anti-government activities of Kol and Munda people were still continued.

In 1846 AD, the Khond (Kondh) people of Chhota Nagpur revolted against the Britishers. They attacked the camp of Captain Macpherson's and forced him to surrender along with his 170 people. Many other neighbouring tribal people joined this revolt. This revolt was suppressed in 1846 AD by the Britishers. But they called

back the man of Kondh tribe who was exiled from the country, was made the head of the tribe. This made the people of Kondh silent.

Then in 1855 AD the Santhal people in the Nagpur area revolted against the Britishers. Nearly 10,000 people got united under the leadership of two brothers Sidhu and Kanhu. These people destroyed the postal and railway service in the area of Bhagalpur and Rajmahal. They attacked the European's bangalows with swords and poisonous arrows killed many Railway and police employees. When British government chased them they fled to the jungles. Till 1856 AD they faced the British army and a military action was continued against them. The leaders of the revolt was arrested and tortured.

Munda revolt was also very important like Santhal revolts against the Britishers. Munda people were the famous tribe of Bihar During British rule the non tribal peopole started coming and living in the tribal areas and they snatched the land of the tribal people. During this time tribal people were forced to work under non-tribal people as labourers. The Munda revolt started under the leadership of the Munda tribe known as Birsa Munda. In 1899-1900 AD this important revolt started in the southern area of Ranchi. The main objective of this revolt was to throw the British out of the area and to establish Munda rule there.



Birsa Munda

Birsa Munda : Birsa Munda was a powerful man. It was assumed that he had divine powers. Local people regarded him as the representative of God. Birsa Munda protested against these non-tribal people who had control over the land of the tribal people. He hated money lenders and zamindars those who use to treat badly the Munda people. He called upon the farmers of Munda not to pay the taxes to the zamindars.

Birsa Munda started revolt in Chhota Nagpur area. The people of Munda society got united under him. They attacked British officials, missionaries and police stations but the people court arrested Birsa Munda and suppressed the revolt.

The Result of the Munda Revolt.

Munda revolt was a powerful revolt. The following were its effects :-

1. The British government passed the Chhota Nagpur act of 1908 AD. Through this act the small farmers got the right over land.
2. The people of the Chhota Nagpur area became more aware from social and religious point of view. Many people started worshipping the Birsa Munda.

3. Many social-religious movements were started, the tribal people started the struggle for their rights.

Other revolts

Many other tribal people also revolted against the British rule. These revolts were for the social and religious reforms. Because the tribal people were against the revenue policies of the British rule.

POINTS TO REMEMBER

1. **Tribal Society** : Tribals who lived in the tribes were called 'Tribal Society'. The major population of them used to live in Rajasthan, Gujarat, Bihar, Orissa and Madhya Pradesh.
2. The economic and social changes in the British Empire mostly effected the economic and social condition of the tribal people.
3. Khasi, Singpho, Naga and Kuki tribes revolted against the Britishers. But British Government suppressed them.
4. Munda tribe revolted against the Britishers in Chhota Nagpur and Kaul tribe also joined the revolt. In 1846 A.D. Kondh tribe revolted against the Britishers in Chota Nagpur.
5. The British Government passed the Chhota Nagpur Act in 1908 AD and under the influence of Birsa Munda revolt. Many people started worshipping the Birsa Munda.



(A) Answer the following questions :

1. In which states majority of the people belonging the tribal society lives ?
2. What are the main occupations of tribal people ?
3. In which states the tribal people revolted against the Britishers ?
4. Who was the leader of Khasi tribe ?
5. When and which tribe in Chhota Nagpur area revolted against the Britishers ?
6. Write a note on tribal society.

7. What do you know about Birsa Munda?
8. Write down the effects of the revolt of Birsa Munda.

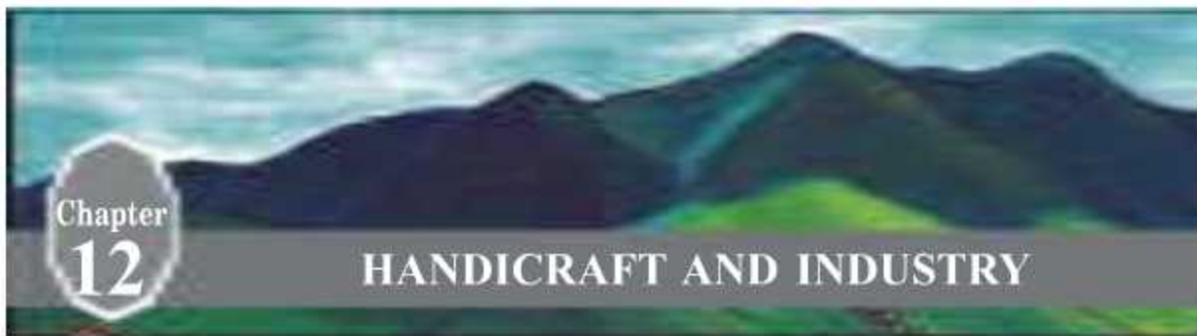
(B) Fill in the Blanks :

1. Tribal society is an part of the Indian population.
2. Tribal people lived in or rooms huts.
3. From Jaintiya hills to Garo hills territories in East were under the control of tribe.
4. When the British soldiers were facing the revolt of Khasi, another tribe revolted.

(C) Write 'True' or 'False' in the brackets given after each statement :

1. Gonds are in minority among the tribes.
2. The basic unit among tribal people is family.
3. The Britishers occupied the tribal land for the opium and indigo farming.
4. Birsa Munda called upon the farmers of Munda tribe to pay the taxes to the zamindars.





Decline of Small Scale Industries in the 19th Century :

Before the establishment of British rule in India the Indian villagers like black smith, weaves, farmers, iron-smith, cobblers, potter etc. used to make the things together to fulfil the needs of the village. Their handicraft and small scale industries were their means of livelihood. But with the establishment of British rule Indian villagers also started using the things which were made in the factories because these were good in quality and more cheap. So that is why the small scale industries of towns and villages started declining and workers became unemployed.

Causes of Decline of Small Scale Industries

1. Abolition of Native Princely States

Britishers abolished many Indian princely states. That is why small scale industries suffered a lot because the Kings and their family members used to use the things made by small scale industries.

2. High Rate of Small Scale Commodities

The rates of the small scale commodities were high because more labour was needed to prepare them. On the other hand the commodities prepared by machines were cheap. So the people did not buy the things made by small scale industries. That is why small scale industries started declining.

3. Better Finishing of the Machine Made Goods

The finishing of the goods made by the machines was better than the goods prepared by small scale industries. This is why Indian people liked machine made goods. So small scale industries started declining.

4. New Generation did not Like the Goods Prepared by Small Scale Industries

New generation was being influenced by western culture. On the other hand goods made in the factories had better finishing and they looked good. That is why people belonging to new generation did not like the goods prepared by small scale industries.

5. Export of Raw Material from India to England

Industrial revolution occurred in England in the 18th century. That is why big factories were established in different parts of the country. Raw material was needed to prepare the goods in the factories which could not be fulfilled by the raw material of England. That is why Indian raw material started moving to England. On the other hand the development of India industries halted because of lack of raw-material.

Modern Indian Industries

During British rule many new industries were established in India. Some of important are mentioned below :

1. **Cotton Textile Industry** : The first cotton factory in India was established in 1853 AD in Bombay. After that many cloth mills were established in cotton growing areas such as Ahmadabad, Nagpur etc. in 1877 AD. Nearly 59 cotton mills were established in India in 1879 AD in which 43000 people used to work. In 1905 AD the number of cotton mills reduced to 206 and 1,96,000 people were working in them.

2. **Jute Industry** : Jute industries use to make mats and sacks. The Europeans had monopoly over this industry. The first factory of this industry was opened in Serampur (Bengal) in 1854 AD. Maximum factories of jute were opened in Bengal. In the beginning of 20th century the number of these factories increased to 36.

3. **Coal Mining Industry** : All the new factories were run by coal. Coal was needed for railways also. So special attention was given to the coal mining industries. Two coal mines were in Raniganj in 1854 AD. By the 1880 AD their number increased to 56 and by 1885 AD it reached 123.

4. **Indigo Plantation Industry** : The production of Indigo started in Bengal and Bihar by the end of the eighteenth century. Indian people were put to work in the big Indigo plantations set up by the Europeans. 35 lakh's Bigha land was under cultivation for Indigo in 1825 AD. It reduced to 3 to 4 lakh's hectare in 1915 AD because of the introduction of synthetic indigo in 1879 AD.

Bigha : A measurement of land

5. **Tea Plantation Industry** : Assam Tea Company was established in 1834 AD. First tea garden was developed by the Britishers in Assam in 1852 AD. From 1920 AD tea was produced on nearly, 7 Lakh hectare of land. At that time the tea worth Rs. 34 crore pounds was sent to other countries from India. Later on tea gardens were set up in the hills of Kangra and Neelgiri.

6. Coffee Plantation Industry : The first coffee garden was established in South India in 1840 AD. Later on coffee garden were set up in Mysore, Kurg, Neelgiri and Malabar areas. This industry suffered a lot because of the competition with the Brazillian coffee.

7. Other Industries : By the end of the 19th century and in the beginning of the 20th century many factories were established among them iron, steel, sugar, paper and leather dying were popular.

The Importance of Growth of Modern Industries

The Growth of modern industries in India had its effect on the economic and social life of the people. As a result two classes emerged-capitalists and workers. The capitalists started the maximum exploitation of the workers. They were made ot work more but were paid less. That is why to improve the condition of the workers, government passed factory acts. With the growth of industries many new cities emerged. These cities became the centres of modern life and culture.

A case study - Textiles : The lovely dresses that you wear - the shirt, dupatta, sarees, shirts are all made up of textiles. We never tried to find out how and where it comes from. Let us look back into history. The Prehistoric man clothed himself with animal skin for warmth. It was much later that spinning and weaving was discovered.

It is supposed that the first weavers in India used grass as a fibre to make his first garment. He later progressed to making designs on it and using threads in a loom.

As the time passed fibres and designs became more refined. Weavers have occupied a place of honour since ancient time in India.

In Mohanjo-daro and Harappa, the archaeologist have found through excavations the remains of bobbins and madder-dyed cotton fabrics. Spindles and woven mats have been found in Kashmir through excavation. All these findings suggest that weaving was known to the people over 4000 years ago.

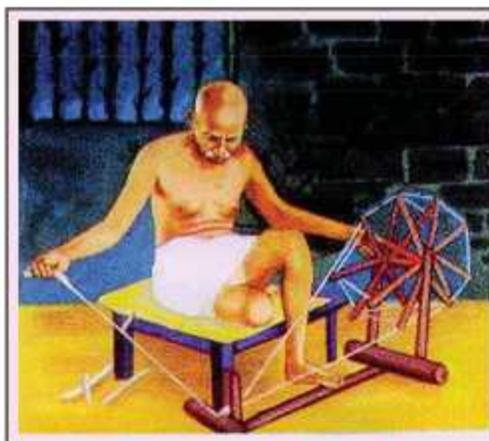
Indian textiles are famous all over the world. Europeans came to India for trading in textiles and spices. With the industrial revolution many big textile mills were set-up. These mills produced much more than simple hand looms. With the starting of industrial revolution in England, the textile industry started decline in india.



A Silky Saree

In the 20th century under the leadership of Mahatma Gandhi, the cotton and silk clothes began to be made, with this the Indian textile industry survived.

Due to the new economic policy of the government, there had been tremendous growth in the textile industry. The government has announced several liberalised measures and benefits for textile export and imports.



Mahatma Gandhi ji

POINTS TO REMEMBER

1. In the 19th century Indian small scale industries of towns and villages declined and workers became unemployed.
2. Causes or Decline of Small Scale Industries :
 - (a) Abolition of Native Princely States.
 - (b) High Rates of Commodities produced in the small scale industries.
 - (c) Better finishing of good made by the machine.
 - (d) New generation did not like the goods prepared by the small scale industries.
 - (e) Export of raw material from India to England.
3. As a result of growth of modern industries, two classes-capitalists and workers emerged in the society.

Exercise

(A) Answer the following questions :

1. Write down the two reasons of decline of small scale industries in India .
2. Why the goods made by small scale industries were expensive in India ?
3. Where and when the first cotton industry was set up in India ?
4. Where and when the first jute industry was set up in India ?
5. Where and when the first coffee garden was set up ?
6. Where and when the first tea garden was set up ?

7. Write down the reasons of decline of small scale industries in India in the 19th century.
8. Write a note as out indigo industry.

(B) Fill in the Blanks :

1. The kings of princely states used to use the things made by industries.
2. New generation did not the goods prepared by small scale industries.
3. All new factories were run by

(C) Write 'True' or 'False' in the brackets given after each statement :

1. All workers became unemployed due to the decline of small scale industries in towns and villages.
2. Industrial revolution occurred in England in the 19th century.
3. The rates of the small scale commodities were high.
4. Indian raw material began export to England in the 18th century.

(D) Match the Worlds :

(A)

- 1 Assam
- 2 Jute Industry
- 3 Coal Mining Industry

(B)

- a. Serampur (Bengal)
- b. Raniganj
- c. Tea Company





We have studied in the previous lessons about the policies of the East Indian Company. How the people condemned the policies and activities, which are against the interests and feelings of the people ? So a revolt occurred at different places in India against the Britishers. Many historians are called it 'Soldier Revolt' while others known it as 'The First War of



REVOLT OF 1857

Independence.' Although the Britishers were successful in suppressing the revolt, but this event is considered as a turning point in Indian history. This revolt encouraged struggle for freedom.

Soldier Revolt : When the soldiers jointly disobey the order to the army officers.

Causes of the Revolt of 1857 A.D.

There were many political, social and economic, religious and military causes of this great revolt. The brief description of these is given below.

Political Causes

- To stop the pension of Nana Sahib :** Nana Sahib was adopted Peshwa Baji Rao II. But after his death when Nana Sahib became his successor then Lord Dalhousie stopped his pension. That is why Nana Sahib became opponent of Britishers and he revolted against them.
- Mal treatment to the Mughal Emperor Bahadur Shah Zafar :** The Britishers told Bahadur Shah Zafar, Mughal Emperor that after his death Red Fort would be occupied. Bahadur Shah Zafar felt insulted and took the pledge to end the British rule in India.
- Adoption of Lapse Policy by Lord Dalhousie :** According the doctrine of Lapse

by Lord Dalhousie if the ruler of any state died without an issue, his adopted son would not be recognized as successor of the state. Lord Dalhousie, according to the doctrine of Lapse annexed many states like Sambhalpur, Jhansi, Nagpur, Udaipur to the British Empire. As a result these states participated in the revolt against the Britishers.

4. Annexation of Avadh in the British Empire : Avadh was a prosperous state Lord Dalhousie on the pretext of mal-administration annexed Avadh to the British Empire. The Nawab of Avadh Wazed Ali revolted against the Britishers.

Social and Religious Causes

1. Interference in Social-Religious Rituals : Lord William Bentick and Lord Dalhousie made many reforms in the Indian society. They declared sati-system and female infanticide illegal, allowed widow-remarriage, banned caste-system and untouchability. People of high class did not like travel in the train with the people of low class. But these reforms had bad effect on the people because they understood it as an interference of the Britishers in their religious matters. As a result Indians revolted against British empire in India.

2. Propagation of Christianity : Many Christians missionaries came to India during British empire. They tried to convince people of India to adopt Christian religion by giving them high posts, huge properties and gifts. Besides this, they showed disrespect towards Hindu and Muslim religions. To adopt Christian religion they used different tactics, so to protect their religion Indians revolted against the Britishers.

3. Ill-treatment to Indians : The Britishers used to insult the Indians. They had put so many restrictions on the Indians. Indians were discriminated on public places and cinema houses. So Indian revolted against the Britishers.

Economic Causes

1. Ruination of Indian Trade and Industry : The Britishers came to India for trade. They used to trade raw material cotton, jute from India at cheap rates and used to sell the finished goods made in the factories of England at high rates. So there started drain of Indian wealth to England. They put tariffs on Indian trade. So Indian industry and trade started ruining. So Indians went against the Britishers.

2. Discrimination in Government Jobs : During British rule Indians were not appointed on high posts. Indians were given lower salaries compared to English. So Indians went against the Britishers.

3. Bad Condition of the Zamindars : Lord William Bentick imposed taxes again on no-taxable lands which were given by emperor to zagirdars as land grants. Rates of land tax was also increased. Government employees used to exploit the zamindars

during tax collection. So zamindars revolted against the Britishers in 1857 AD.

Military Causes

Indian soldiers were given lower salaries than British soldiers. The Indian soldiers could reach only to the post of Subedar. In 1856 A.D. Lord Canning passed an act according to which the Indian soldiers could be sent across sea on any place to take part in war. Crossing the sea was considered by the Indian soldiers against their religions. They afraid from the weather and problems of other countries. They had a fear that the Britishers would not become christians.

Suppose you are a soldier of the army of the East India Company. You do not want that your brother or nearest kith and kin will be employed in the army of the company. Which cause you will tell to him of it ?

Immediate Causes

1. Greased Cartridges : In 1857 AD the Britishers gave soldiers new rifles. The cartridges were to cut with the teeth before loading. These were greased with the cow and pig fat. This provoked the Hindu and Muslim soldiers and they revolted against Britishers. The Indian soldiers were not satisfied from the British government. They were looking for an opportunity to take the revenge from the Britishers. In 1857 AD the Britishers used greased cartridges which were to cut with the teeth before loading in the rifles. These were greased with cow and pig fat. The Hindu and Muslim did not want to use these cartridges because by doing so their religious feelings were hurt. The first one who refused to use these cartridges was Mangal Pandey. On 29th March 1857 he refused to use them and killed a British officer. So there started the revolt of 1857 AD.

Why did the Hindu and Muslim soldiers disliked use of the cartridge ?

Main Events of the Revolt

Barrakpur : The revolt of 1857 AD started in Barrakpur. This was led by a soldier named Mangal Pandey. Mangal Pandey refused to use the greased cartridges and asked other soldiers to do the same. He was court arrested. He killed the British officer and was hanged for this. The first Martyrdom of 1857 was Mangal Pandey, with the news of this event, the feeling of revolt spread throughout India.



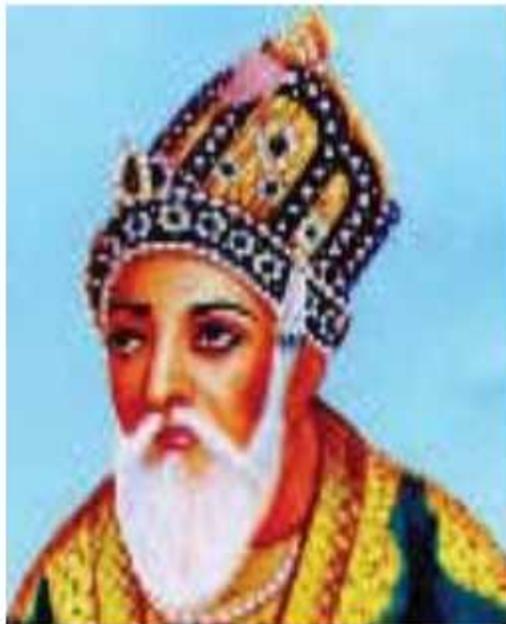
Mangal Pandey

The Events of Meerut : Nearly 85 soldiers in Meerut refused to use the greased cartridges. So they were arrested. This provoked the Indian soldiers. Although they had fixed the 31st May for revolt in India but without waiting anymore they released their fellow-beings on 10th May, 1857 by breaking the jail. They killed the British soldiers and their family members, set their houses on fire and moved for Delhi.



Design The Event of Meerut

The Events of Delhi : After the event of Meerut the Indian soldiers reached Delhi on 11th May, 1857. the British Commander Ripley tried to stop them but was unsuccessful. Colonel and other British officers were killed. Indian soldiers occupied red fort. They declared Bahadur Shah Zafar their emperor.



Bahadur Shah Zafar

This movement spread rapidly to Aligarh, Etawa, Manipur and Bundelkhand. Then this revolt spread to Kanpur, Lucknow, Jhansi and Bihar. This movement had deep effects on Punjab and Rajasthan.

General Nicholson with the help of the Some Indian irregular troops occupied Delhi on 14th September. Bahadur Shah Zafar was taken prisoner and sent to Rangoon. After sometime Bahadur Shah Zafar was died and the rank of Mughal Emperor came to an end. His two sons were shot dead.

The Events of Kanpur : Nana Sahib with the help of his famous general Tantiya Tope occupied Kanpur and killed many British officers. On 17th July 1857 General Havelock defeated Tantiya Tope and again occupied Kanpur Nana Sahib fled to Nepal and got asylum and Tantiya Tope joined Rani Jhansi.



Tantiya Tope

The Events of Lucknow

Lucknow was the capital of Awadh. Here the leadership was provided by Begum Hazarat Mahal wife of Nabab Wazid Ali Shah. The

people of Awadh fully participated in the revolt. These rebellions killed many Britishers. This included chief-commissioner. Henry Lawrence. When General Havelock reached Lucknow to help Britishers, he was also killed by revolters. In the end General Collin after a fierce battle occupied Lucknow and Campbell.

the Britishers because the Britishers refused to recognize the adopted son of Rani as successor. So she started a struggle against Britishers. The Britishers attacked Rani Lakshmi Bai. She fought bravely against Britishers Tantiya Tope helped her. But while fighting bravely she attained martyrdom. Later on Tantiya Tope was also arrested and hanged in 1859 AD.

Punjab : Although the rulers of the Princely States of Punjab helped Britishers in the revolt of 1857. But still at many places in Punjab, the soldiers revolted against British at Ferozpur, Peshawar, Hoti-Mardam, Jalandhar etc. The Britishers suppressed these revolts and killed soldiers in large number. The leaders of the territories of Riwari, Bhiwani, Balabharh, Hansi in the modern Haryana faced the Britishers.

Besides these, revolts occurred at Benaras, Allahabad, Bareilly but the Britishers suppressed them.



Nana Sahib



Rani Lakshmi Bai

Make a list of place where occurred the revolt of 1857 AD ?

The Contribution of the Punjabis in the Revolt of 1857 AD

- 1. The Soldier's Revolt :** The revolt of 1857 AD started from Meerut on 10th May, 1857 AD. When the news reached at Lahore in Punjab on 12th May 1857 the Indian and Punjabi soldiers of Mian Mir cantonment were disarmed. Later on in Lahore, Peshawar, Nawanshehar, Rawalpindi, Ambala, Amritsar, Hoshiarpur and Derajat Punjabi and Indian soldiers were disarmed. Still the soldiers revolted in Jallandhar, Phillaur, Sialkot and Jhelam also.
- 2. People's Revolt :** The natives of Ludhiana and Ferozepur revolted at many places. The Muslim tribes of Montgomery, Multan, Bahawalpur and Fazilka also stood against the Britishers. The people of Delhi, Rohillakhand also gave their support to rebellions. The Punjabis revolted at certain places in Rohtak and Riwari. In Karnal many Jatt villages refused to pay land revenue to the government.
- 3. Sardar Ahmad Khan Khurl's Revolt :** The leader of the Kharel tribe Sardar Ahmad Khan Khurl revolted by not paying taxes. Many tribes living on the Bank of Ravi also supported him. He faced Britishers at many places. He killed one the 20 horsemen against the Britishers near Pakpattan.

The Revolt of 1857 could not be successful because they had no able leader. Instead of supporting the rebellions the princely states of Punjab supported Britishers. so the revolt for the struggle for freedom could not be successful.

Causes of the Failure of the Revolt of 1857

1. The date of start the revolt was fixed on 31st May 1857 but it started on 29th March 1857. The revolters were not ready for this.
2. There was lack of unity among the rebellions.
3. The rebellions had less means than Britishers.
4. The revolt could not spread throughout India.
5. Rulers of some Indian princely states like Hyderabad, Gwalior, Patiala, Nabha, Jind and Kapurthala helped Britishers.
6. The Britishers had control over the means of communications and transportation.
7. The Britishers suppressed this revolt by using their full force.
8. The secret agency of the Britishers was excellent.
9. The rebellions lacked good commanders.
10. There was a lack of common purpose among rebellions.

Results of 1857 AD Revolt

Political Results : The rule of East India Company was put to an end by establishing direct rule of the Parliament that Indian matters could be solved easily. The Governor General of India was given a new title of viceroy. The Mughal dynasty came to an end. In India the Indian rulers were given the right to adopt son. The Britishers abandoned the policy of merging the Indian states into British empire.

Social Results : The important result of the revolt of 1857 was that Queen Victoria declared that the policy of religious toleration would be adopted. The Indians would be given govt. services on the basis of their ability. The Indians would be given higher posts. After the revolt of 1857 the Britishers adopted the policy of 'Divide and Rule.' According to this policy the Britishers started making Hindu and Muslims to fight against each other so that they could establish their rule.

Military Results : To reduce the danger of revolt after the revolt of 1857, the Britishers decreased the number of Indian soldiers by increased the number of European soldiers in the army. Only Europeans were appointed in artillery department. The soldiers were grouped on the basis of religion and caste, so that they could not revolt together against the British government. Indian soldiers were being kept under observation. The expenditure of European soldiers was paid by the Indians.

Economic Results : After the revolt of 1857 the administration of India was passed on to British government. The government imposed so many trade restrictions on Indians. As a result Indian trade suffered a lot. Many Amirs captured the trade of Tea, Coffee, Tobacco, Cotton etc.

Regional Focus : Awadh : Awadh was a rich province. The Britishers adopted unfair means to control it. The Nawab Wazid Ali Shah always remained loyal to Britishers. But still Britishers started interfering in his internal matters. Like the Britishers forced the Nawab to keep a British army in his state. Later local army was replaced by British army so the expenditure increased. The soldiers of the disbanded army got unemployed. In 1850 AD Britishers annexed the state of Awadh by making an allegation of mal-administration. As a result the Awadh soldiers, farmers and zamindars participated in the revolt of 1857 AD.

POINTS TO REMEMBER

1. The Revolt of 1857 AD is called 'A Soldiers Revolt and Struggle for freedom of India.
2. There were many political, social-religious and military causes of this revolt.
3. Mangal Pandey was the first martyr of the revolt of 1857 AD.
4. The Revolt of 1857 AD spread in the different places of the country.
5. The Britishers suppressed this revolt by using their full force and with the help of kings of princely states.
6. The rule of East India Company was put to an end and established direct rule of the British Government in India.
7. The Governor-General of India assumed a new title as 'Viceroy.'
8. The British Government committed with the Indians that they would not discriminate with them.
9. The Government imposed trade instructions on Indians.
10. The Britishers adopted the policy of 'Divide and Rule.'
11. Although this revolt was unsuccessful yet it provide helpful for the freedom of country.



(A) Answer the following questions :

1. Write down any two political causes of the revolt of 1857 A.D.
2. Write down any two social and religious cases of the revolt of 1857 A.D.
3. Write about Immediate cause of the revolt of 1857 A.D.
4. Write down the causes of failure of the revolt of 1857 A.D.
5. Write down the Economic results of the revolt of 1857 A.D.

(B) Fill in the Blanks :

1. The cartridges were greased with the fat of cow and
2. Many states were annexed to the British Empire according to the Doctrine of Lapse of Lord
3. First of all the revolt of 1857 AD was started in
4. was a famous general of Nana Sahib.
5. Indian soldiers declared their emperor.

(C) Write 'True' or 'False' in the brackets given after each statement :

1. Indians were appointed on high posts.
2. Good treatment was given to the Indians by the Britishers.
3. The Britishers made many social reforms.
4. Gradually Indian industry and trade declined.
5. The Britishers adopted the policy of 'Divide and Rule.'

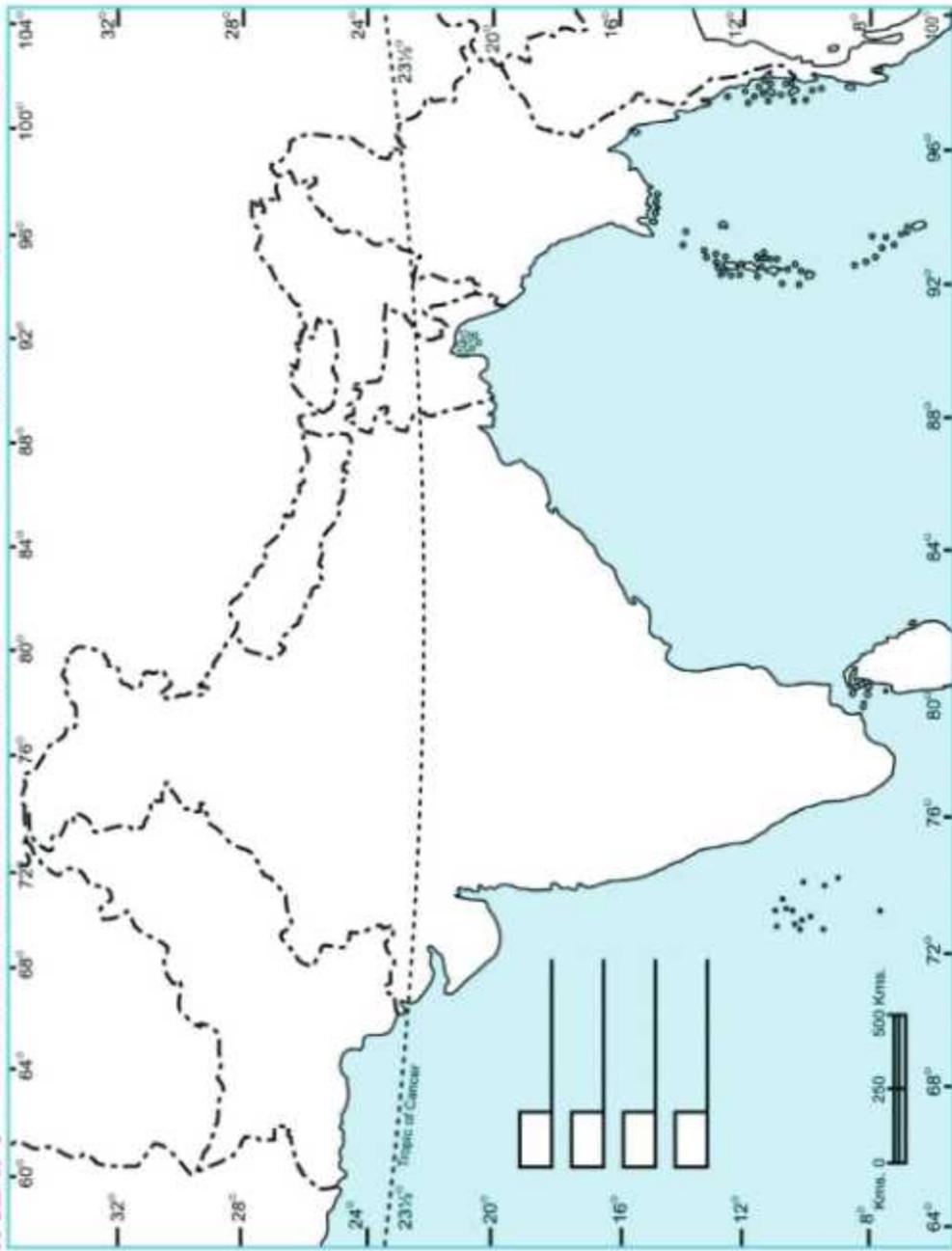
Activity

1. Make a chart on the life of Lakshmi Bai, queen of Jhansi.
2. Collect the pictures of prominent freedom fighters and paste them in your scrap book.



INDIA – PHYSICAL AND ADJACENT COUNTRIES

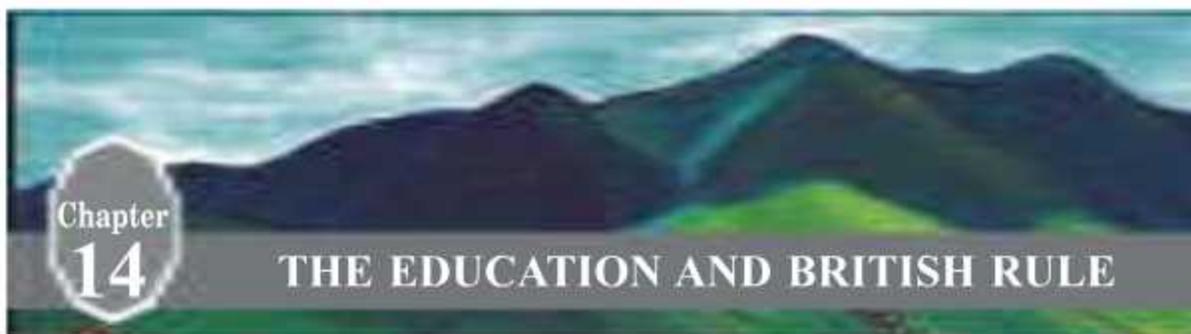
भारत – प्राकृतिक और पड़ोसी देश



1. Based upon Survey of India Map with the permission of the Surveyor General of India.
2. The territorial waters of India extend into the sea to a distance of twelve nautical miles measured from the appropriate baselines.
3. The inter-state boundaries between Uttar Pradesh & Uttarakhand, Bihar & Jharkhand, Madhya Pradesh & Chhattisgarh have not been verified by the Governments concerned.
4. The boundary of Meghalaya shown on this map is as interpreted from the Indo-Eastern-African (Organisation) Act, 1971. Its final part to be worked out.
5. The External Boundary and coastline of India shown on this map agree with the Record-Master copy certified by the Survey of India, Dehradun.
6. The administrative Headquarters of Chandigarh, Haryana and Puducherry are at Chandigarh.

© Government of India, Copyrights 2011

Name Class Roll No. Teacher Signature



In ancient times there was a proper arrangement for education. The education was imparted to both women and men.

(A) The History of Modern Education

Before the coming of the Britishers, in India religious education was given in Ashramas, Pathshala, Madrasas, Temples and Mosques. Schools in Mosques were called 'Maktaba' (where the students learnt about the Kuran Sharif) and "Pathshalas" in Temples and Gurdwaras. In these schools the religious books were taught in their own languages. Hindu students taught about Sanatan religion, respect the cow and Brahmanas. For example the education was imparted in Urdu, Persian and Arabic in Maktabas, in Gurmukhi and Punjabi in Gurdwaras and in Hindi and Sanskrit language in Temple Pathshalas. The religious leaders like Maulavi and Pandits used to teach the students. For higher studies high schools were there, where the students belong to all religions were imparted education. For higher education in Hindi and Sanskrit schools and colleges were opened in big cities like Benaras. Schools were opened even for education in handicrafts and trade which were known as 'Mahajan' schools.

Madarsa : A learning place is called 'Madaras' in Arabian language.

The Britishers introduced new education system in India. English language and Western literature was taught inspite of Indian languages. New schools, colleges and universities were established for the development of English language and its literature, fixed syllabi, were formed and more attention began to give to technical education.

(B) Purpose to Start Western Education

The Britishers needed educated people to run its administration. They needed the people who could listen to the problems of the Indians and could communicate in English. In the view of Britishers the English educated Indians could easily be agreed to convert to Christianity.

(C) Development of Western Education

The Western Education in India was established during British rule. In 1641 AD to propagate Christianity East India Company started imparting education to Indians. In 1715 AD company opened Saint Marry Charity school in Madras, Warren Hastings, Jonathan Dunkun opened a Sanskrit school here.

1. Development of Education from 1813 AD-1854 AD

In the Charter Act of 1813 Government planned to spent 1 lakh rupees on education every year. But this money could not be spent because of lack of fixed educational policy of the government. In 1823 AD a committee was constituted to discuss the educational policy. But disagreement started among the members. Some members were in favour of spending this money on the Western education in English medium. Where other members wanted that the medium of instruction should be vernacular languages like Sanskrit, Persian and Arabic. When Lord Macauley became the president of the education committee in 1835 AD, he took the decision in favour of western education. Raja Ram Mohan Roy also laid stress to adopt western education.

In 1854 AD the President of Board of Control Charles Wood made some recommendation which are called “Wood’s Dispatch.”

2. Setting-up of the Hunter Commission in 1882 AD

For the growth of education the government set up Hunter commission. Certain recommendations were made by it are given :

1. Grants should be given to private schools.
2. Efforts should be made to improve the secondary schools.
3. Special arrangements should be made for the education of the women.
4. Students should be given physical and mental education.

The Government accepted the recommendation of Hunter Commission which became the main base for the modern education system.

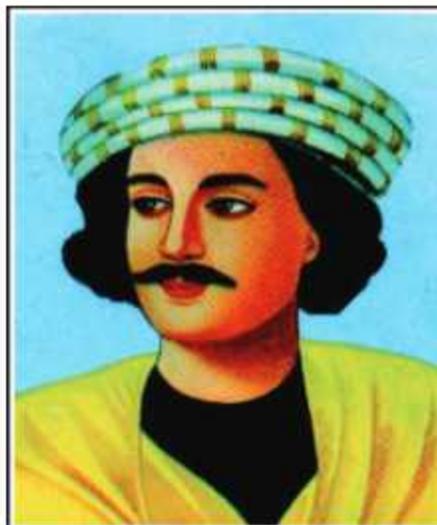
3. **Indian Universities Law-1904 A.D. :** In 1904 A.D. Lord Curson passed the Indian University Act. Accordingly this act interference of the governments in universities increased, Nationalists opposed this act.
4. **Sadler Committee - 1917 A.D. :** Government appointed Sadler Committee in 1917 A.D. for the development of education which presented certain recommendations :
 1. The medium of instruction at the school level should be vernacular languages and later it can be English.
 2. Reforms should be made in the examination system.
 3. Special attention should be paid towards technical education.
 4. Government control should be reduced over the university.
 5. Vice-Chancellors should be appointed in every university.
5. **Hartog Committee - 1928 AD :** To improve the education Hartog Committee was appointed which recommended :
 1. Primary education should be made compulsory.
 2. The teachers should be paid more salaries.
 3. No unnecessary expenditure should be spent on education.
6. **Basic Education – 1937 AD :** In 1937 AD Mahatma Gandhi suggested to introduce basic education, according to him the education should be free and compulsory to the children till the age of 14 years. They should be given education in handicrafts also.
7. **Sargent Scheme – 1943 A.D. :** The Sargent Committee recommended to the government for the development of education which are mentioned below :
 1. Before giving primary education, the education should be given in kindergarten.
 2. The students of the age of 6 to 15 years, should be given free education.
 3. Adult education should be given.
 4. Limited students should be given admission to college.

Education and Indian Reformers

Many Indian literates participated in the discussion over the western education system in India. Many intellectual agreed with the view that the western education would create the feeling of nationalism, which was necessary to preserve the Indian

culture. Now we would get information of efforts related with the education by the Indian reformers.

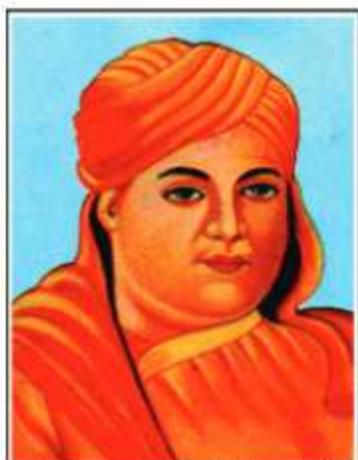
1. **Raja Ram Mohan Roy** : Raja Ram Mohan Roy made many efforts for the development of education to the prevalent superstitious and false rituals. He was in favour of imparting Western Education to the Indians. He was well versed in Bengali, Persian, Sanskrit, Urdu, English and Greek language. He published two newspapers and wrote books in Bengali about grammar, geography, astronomy, arthmatics. He opened many educational institutions for the progress of the education. On his own expenses he opened a English school and a Vedanata College.



Raja Ram Mohan Roy

Do you know why did Raja Ram Mohan Roy was in favour of imparting western education to the Indians ?

2. **Swami Dayanand Saraswati** : Swami Dayanand Saraswati was in favour of imparting Sanskrit, vedic education along with western education. He established many

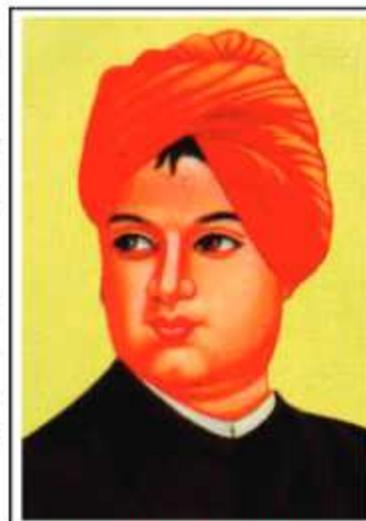


Swami Dayanand Saraswati

schools, colleges and gurukuls in India particularly in Punjab and Uttar Pradesh. After the death of Dayanand Saraswati in 1886 a Dayanand Anglo School was opened in Lahore, in his memory. After that in 1889, along with the Anglo school, an Anglo-College was also opened. In it, students were given education of Hindu literature, culture and Vedas. Later on D.A.V. schools were opened in Hoshiarpur, Jalandhar and Kanpur, During the time of Swami Dayanand Saraswati a

women college was established in Meerut.

3. **Swami Vivekanand** : Swami Vivekanand established Rama Krishan Mission. He propaged the Indian culture in America and Europe. This mission established schools, colleges, libraries, hospitals and orphanage to reform the society.



Swami Vivekanand

4. Ishwar Chander Vidayasagar : Ishwar Chander Vidayasagar was another famous Indian intellectual. He wrote in Bengali named 'Premier varnar Prichaya' in which it was made essay learn the language which is still in use. He made a special contribution in the education of the women.

5. Annie Besant and Theosophical Society : Annie Besant made special contribution in the growth of education. She established schools and colleges for boys and girls at various places. She established a Central High School at Benaras, which later on became Hindu University.

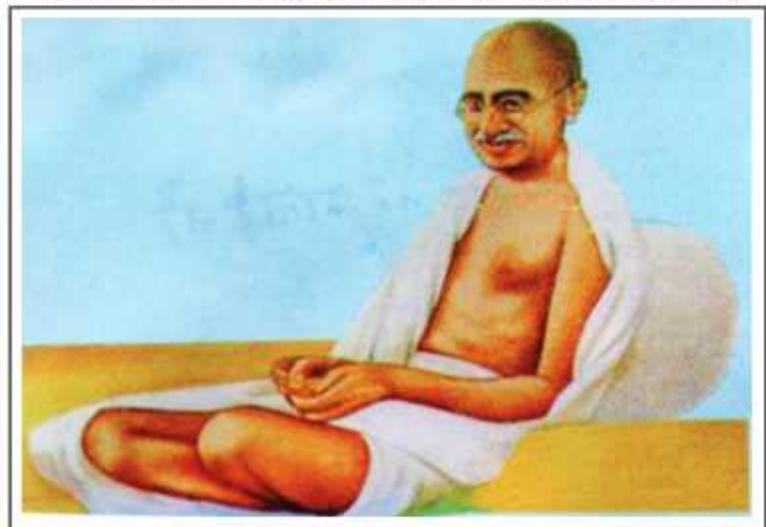
Mahatma Gandhi Ji's views regarding Western Education

According to Mahatma Gandhi Ji 'English education has made us slave'. According to Mahatma Gandhi Ji Indians are influenced by Western Civilization. The students who were studying in these institutions praised every thing from the west. Even they started praising British Rule. During the National Movement, the students were told to leave these institutions and show the Britishers that they are no longer their slave. Those Indians who spoke foreign language could not communicate properly with Indian public. They became strangers in their own land. According to Mahatma Gandhi education should be imparted in Indian languages. Those Indians who were studying English were neither expert in English nor in their own language. They became incompetent for house hold work because they felt it against their dignity. As a result unemployment became a big problem. According to Mahatma Gandhi Western Education support only bookish Knowledge and gives neither practical knowledge.

According to him studying student's brain and conscious should be developed with education. Students should work themselves and should develop skills. How to work according different kinds of system ? With their brain and capacity of work is developed. Due to these reasons Mahatma Gandhi Ji introduced Basic Occupation Training Programme.



Mrs. Annie Besant



Mahatma Gandhi Ji

Rabindra Nath Tagore's Shanti Niketan : You must have listened about Shanti Niketan. Do you know by whom and why was it established ? Ravinder Nath Tagore started this institution in 1901 AD. When he was a child, going to school was like going to jail to him and he felt uneasiness there. When the other children listened to the teacher, his mind roamed somewhere else. When he grew up, he thought of opening a school where children can be happy, be free be creative and could easily understand their thoughts. It should be free from the strict and restricted discipline of education system established by the Britishers. Teacher can understand the students and help them to develop curiosity and desire to know. Such type of creative education can be imparted in natural atmosphere. So he decided to open a school in rural area about 100 Kilometer away from Calcutta. He felt this place was peaceful, where children can develop with nature. Although Mahatma Gandhi and Rabindra Nath Tagore had same suggestions but Gandhi Ji was deadly against the western culture. Tagore wanted a mixture of best element of western culture and Indian traditions. There was imparted education of art, music and dance as well as science education etc. was imparted in Shanti Niketan.

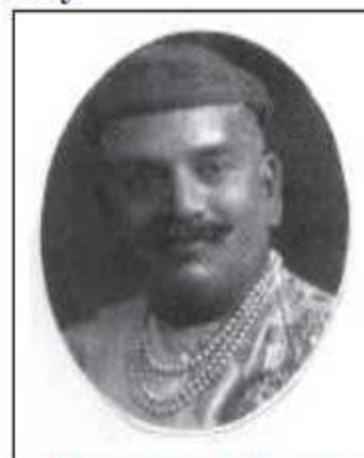


Shanti Niketan

A case study - Baroda University

Baroda is an important city of Gujarat. This city is famous for Sayaji Rao university. This university was established in 1948 AD by Sayaji Rao III.

Maharaja Sayaji Rao was a famous intellectual. He made reforms in the field of education. He established a network of schools, libraries and hospitals through the length and breadth of his state. He propagated Swadishi and advocated national movement. In 1881 Maharaja Sayaji Rao-III laid the foundation of the Baroda college which later on flourished into a full fledged university. Baroda has 20 public schools and over 100 private schools. All



Maharaja Sayaji Rao

attached to Maharaja Sayaji Rao University. This is the only university in Gujarat in which education is imparted in English medium. In this university about 3000 students from country and abroad are providing education.

A Case Study : Sir Sayyid Ahmad Khan and Aligarh University

Sir Sayyid Ahmad Khan was the first Muslim reformer. He started the Aligarh movement in the 19th century to reform Muslim society and religion. He interpreted the Muslim religion and principles to eradicate superstition and false traditions prevalent among the Indian Muslims. That is why there is laid stress on the western education and study of the western literature. In 1875 AD he established the Muslim Anglo-Oriental College at Aligarh. Later on this college became the nucleus of the Aligarh movement. In 1920 AD this college transformed into Aligarh Muslim University. The first Principal of this college was Mr. Beck. He contributed a lot to Sir Sayyid Ahmad Khan to bring the Muslims close to the British government.



Sir Sayyid Ahmad Khan

Sir Sayyid Ahmad Khan was made a member of the Public Service Commission in 1878 AD. In 1882 AD he was appointed as a member of the Viceroy's Legislative Council. In 1888 AD he was conferred the title of 'Sir'. He died in 1898 AD.

Aligarh Movement : The Aligarh movement was a popular movement, which was started by Sir Sayyid Ahmad Khan for the awareness of the Muslims, because Aligarh was the centre of the movement that is why it is known as the Aligarh Movement. The leaders of this movement stressed upon, and to discard the false rituals and to get the western education. The founder of this movement, Sir Sayyid Ahmad Khan was in favour of British rule. So that by getting facilities the Muslim interests could be saved.



Aligarh University

A Case Study : Aligarh University

Aligarh is an important city of Uttar Pradesh. Here in sayyid 1920 AD Aligarh Muslim University was founded. Leaders like Hidayatula Khan and Sir Ahmad Khan thought that for the all round development of the Muslims, western education and literature are necessary. So under the guidance of Sir Sayyid Ahmad Khan, in 1875 AD Hidayatula Khan founded the Muhammadan Anglo-Oriental College at Aligarh. Gradually this college developed into Aligarh Muslim University by 1920 AD. The first Chancellor of this University was Sultan-Jaha-Begum, Gradually this university progressed and many medical and engineering colleges were established by it. At present this university have 30,000 students on enroll and there are nearly 80 educational departments.

Effects of Western Education

1. Due to British education ministerial culture came in exercise in India.
2. Due to expensive education Most of the Indians remained illiterate.
3. Indian language could not develop.
4. Due to Western education prevalent superstitions could be removed.
5. Due to Western Education Indians have studied the history of other countries and contributed to independent the country.

POINTS TO REMEMBER

1. Before the advent of the Britishers in India religious education was imparted in the Ashrams, Pathshala, Madassa, Temples and Gurdwaras.
2. The purpose of the new education system of the Britishers was taught English language and western literature to the Indians instead of Indian languages.
3. New schools, colleges and universities were established fo the development of English language and western literature.
4. Schools were opened for the training of handicraft and trade which were known as 'Mahajani Schools.'
5. Many Indian reformers – Raja Ram Mohan Roy, Swami Dayanand Saraswati, Swami Vivekanand. Ishwar Chander Vidayasagar, Mrs. Annie Besant made efforts related with the development of education.
6. In 1920 AD Aligarh Muslim University was established.
7. Mahatma Gandhi emphasised on vocational education in schools.



(A) Answer the following questions :

1. Who introduced the new educational system in India ?
2. Who gave Wood's Despatch ?
3. When and where was the Muslim-Anglo-oriented college established?
4. When the title of 'Sir' was conferred to Sir Sayyid Ahmad Khan ? When did he die ?
5. In which languages the Raja Ram Mohan Roy was expert ?
6. Which book was written by Ishwar Chander Vidyasagar ?
7. Write down the effects of Western Educational System.
8. Explain the contribution of the following different intellectuals in the field of Modern Education System.
 1. Raja Ram Mohan Roy
 2. Swami Dyananad Saraswati
 3. Swami Vivekanand
 4. Ishwar Chander Vidyasagar

(B) Fill in the Blanks :

1. Sir Sayyid Ahmad Khan established Muslim Anglo-Oriental.....in Aligarh.
2. In 1888 AD, Sir Sayyid Ahmad Khan he conferred the title of
3. During the time of Swami Dyanand Saraswati a women college was established in

(C) Match the following :

(A)

1. Raja Ram Mohan Roy
2. Ishwar Chandar Vidyasagar
3. Swami Vivekanand

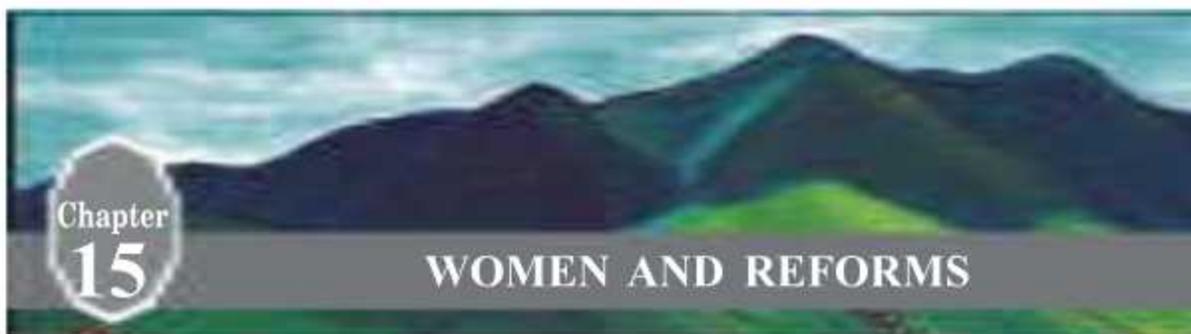
(B)

1. Wrote a book in Bengali language named 'Premier Varna Prichaya' established
2. Rama Krishan Mission.
3. was well versed in Bengali, Persian, Sanskrit, Urdu, English and Greek language.

Activity

Collect more information about Mahatma Gandhi Ji and Ravinder Nath Tagore. Write this information on chart.





In the 19th century in the Indian society the condition of the women was pitiable such as sati-system, female infanticide, slavery, parda system, ban on widow remarriage, polygamy etc. social evils prevalent in the society. To eradicate these evils from the society many religious and social movements were started.

Need for Women Reform Movements

- 1. Female Infanticide :** The birth of a girl child was considered unlucky. There were many reasons for this. First lots of money was to be spent on their marriages which was beyond the reach of common man. Secondly, it was difficult for the parents to find a suitable groom for their daughters. That is why some people use to kill their girls at the time of their birth.
- 2. Child Marriage :** The girls were married off at a tender age. That is why the girls often remained illiterate.
- 3. Sati-System :** According to Sati sytem the woman was burnt alive on the pyre of his husband.
- 4. Ban on Widow-Remarriage :** Society had banned window remarriage. Widows were disrepected in the society. Their hair were chopped off.
- 5. Purdah System :** In the parda system women always used to cover themselves. It had bad effect on their health and growth.
- 6. Dowry System :** Womoen were given dowry at the time of their marriage. The poor had to take loan from the money-lenders to pay off dowry. That is why sometimes girls used to commit suicide.
- 7. To keep the Women Illiterate :** The women were not given education. To educate them was considered useless because this means giving them freedom without need. It was considered against the society to educate the women.
- 8. Not to give the Women Right to Property in Hindu Society :** The women in Hindu society had not the right to inherit property.

Many Social reformers paid special attention towards to improve the condition of women due to the following causes.

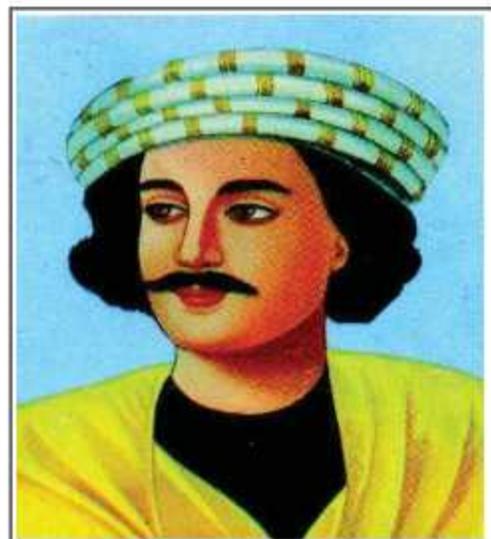
1. Women is a creator, any country could not develop without the cooperation of woman.
2. It is compulsory to educate woman to eradicate the social evils prevalent in the society.
3. The evils prevalent in the society can be eradicate if efforts will be made to improve the condition of woman.
4. It is compulsory for the country and society to provide the right of equality to the woman.
5. Social reformers supported for providing rights and freedom to woman in the house and society due to excess population of women in the country.

During ancient period the means of communication were limited so they could not reach the common people. In the modern period due to the discovery of press, publication of books, newspapers and magazines became very cheap. People were able to express their views and understand the views of other in common language through these. So the political, social, religious and economic problems could be discussed. Common people awakened through the propagation about the reformation of woman category by the social reformers.

The reformers who contributed to reform the condition of women in the society are mentioned below :

Raja Ram Mohan Roy (1772-1833 AD) And Brahma Samaj :

Raja Ram Mohan Roy was a great reformer of 19th century. To reform the condition of women in the society he said that the society can't progress until women are given equal rights with men. He propagated to stop Sati System. After the death of his brother named Jagmohan, his wife was made sati forcibally. This event brought a new turn in his life. As a result of his logic and efforts William Bentick banned sati system in 1829 AD. He wrote differnt articles for the welfare of the women. He condemned child marriage and polygamy. He protested again the killing of the girls. He



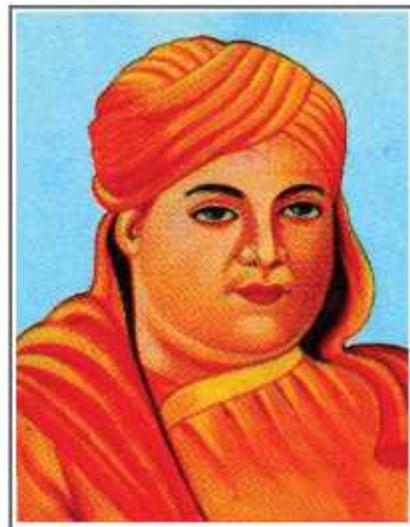
Raja Ram Mohan Roy

protested against Purdah system by saying that it hinders the growth of women. He propagated for women education. He was in favour of widow-remarriage. He also propagated for the regent of women in property of their parents. He was in favour of imparting education in English medium.

Ishwar Chander Vidyasagar : Ishwar Chander Vidyasagar was another social reformer. He open nearly 25 schools for the girls in Bengal on his own expenses. He started struggle against the issue of widow-remarriage, in 1855-60 AD. He condemned child marriage. Because of his efforts. Hindu Widow Remarriage Act was passed in 1856 AD.

Arya Samaj and Work done by Swami Dayanand Ji

Swami Dayanand protested against the 'child marriage'. He was in favour of widow-remarriage. He established widow Ashrams to reform the conditions of widows. Aray Samaj condemned the sati system and dowry system. Many centres were established to train the destitute girls in sewing. He established schools in different parts of the country for the education of the women.



Swami Dayanand Ji

Efforts of Sir Sayyid Ahmad Khan

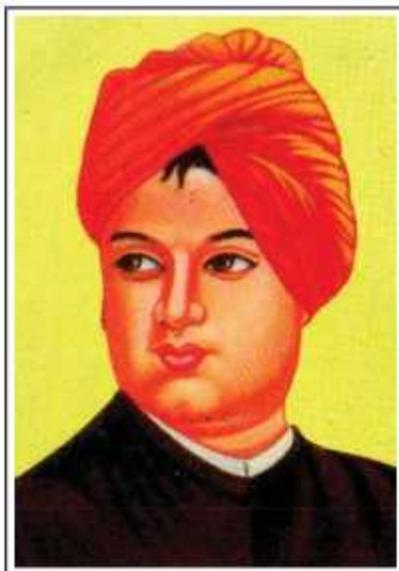
Sir Sayyid Ahmad Khan wanted reform in the Muslim society. According to him women



Sir Sayyid Ahmad Khan

are treated equal with men. He strongly condemned the child marriage, Parda System. He propagated against the divorce system. He published a newspaper named, : "Tahzib-ul-Akhalk" to eradicate the social evils prevalent in the society. He was in favour of western education along with religious education. He established a scientific society in Aligarh in 1862 AD to translate the books of science in Urdu. In 1874 AD Sir Sayyid Ahmad Khan established Muslim Anglo-Oriental School in Aligarh and in 1878 AD opened Muslim Anglo-Oriental College. In 1920 AD this college was converted into Aligarh-Muslim University.

Swami Vivekanand and Rama Krishna Mission : In 1897 AD. Swami Vivekanand established Rama Krishna Mission at Vellore near Calcutta in the memory of his teacher Swami Rama Krishna Paramahansa. He put his special efforts to reform the conditions of women. He was in favour of giving equal rights to women along with men. He condemned the prevalent evils among women like female infanticide, child marriage and dowry system. He established many schools and libraries and propagated for women education.



Swami Vivekanand

Contribution of Keshav Chander Sen : Keshav Chander Sen was another popular leader of Brahma Samaj. He joined Brahma Samaj in 1857 AD. He established Sangat Sabha in which discussions were held on religious matters. Keshav Chander Sen propagated in favour of women education, widow remarriage. He strongly condemned the child marriage, polygamy etc. Due to the efforts of Keshav Chander Sen the Government passed a law in 1872 AD and put a ban on more than one marriage at a time.

Mrs. Annie Besant and Theosophical Society

The contribution of Mrs. Annie Besant and Theosophical Society : Mrs. Annie Besant joined theosophical society in 1886 AD. In England, and in 1893 AD, she came to India. Theosophical society made social reforms, condemned child marriage and the prevalent caste system. It also tried to improve the condition of women and lower caste people. Society opened many schools and colleges for boys and girls at various places. In 1898 AD, Central Hindu College was established at Benaras where the education in other religions along with Hindu religion was imparted.



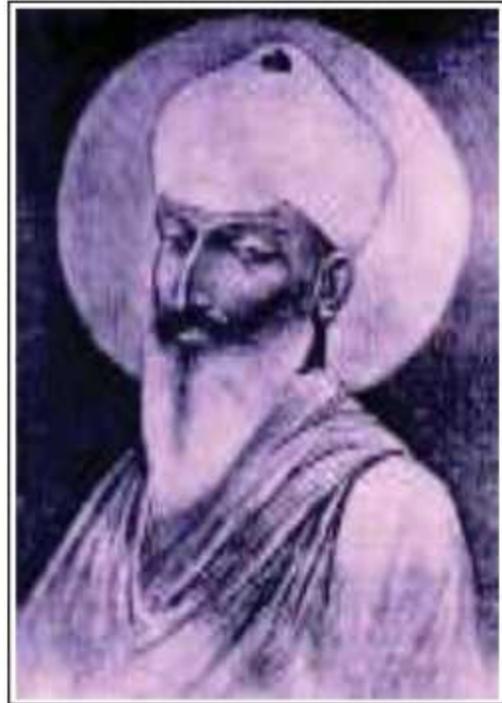
Mrs. Annie Besant

Reform Movement in Punjab

Like other parts of India, there were many evils prevalent in Punjab. To eradicate these evils many movements originated in Punjab like Nirankari, Namdhari and Singh Sabha.

1. Nirankari Movement and Baba Dyal Singh Ji : The founder of Nirankari movement was Baba Dyal Singh. He condemned Child marriage, Dowry system and Sati System were prevalent in the society. He was in favour of widow remarriage.

2. Namdhari Movement and Sri Satguru Ram Singh Ji : Sri Satguru Ram Singh Ji founded Namdhari movement Sri Bhaini Sahib (Ludhiana) on 12th April 1857 AD. He condemned the child marriage, female infanticide, Sati system, dowry system and caste distinction. He propagated for equal rights to women with men. 3 June, 1863 AD. He condemned the use of excess money at the time of marriage and dowry system. He started a new system of 'Anand Marriage.' In This the rituals of marriage were completed in just one and a half rupee without dowry.



Sri Satguru Ram Singh Ji

3. Singh Sabha Movement : To end the social evils existing in society and Sikhism, the Singh Sabha movement was started at Manji Sahib, Amritsar in 1873. Sardar Thakur Singh Sandhwalia was appointed President and Giani Gian Singh as Secretary. Sikhs living in different parts of the country could be its members. One branch was founded at Lahore in 1879AD of which S. Gurmukh Singh was made President. Gradually, many Singh Sabhas were established across the country. Singh Sabha Movement vehemently propagated equal rights for women with men. This movement condemned Parda System, Child marriage, Polygamy and banned widow remarriage. Singh Sabha also established homes for widows.

Singh Sabha were established schools like Sikh Kanya Mahavidyalala, Ferozepur, Khalsa Bhayang School, Karoon and Vidya Bhandar, Bhamore etc. for the women education.

4. Ahmediya Movement : In 1853, Mirza Ghulam Ahmed started the Ahmediya movement in Qadian(district Gurdaspur). He advocated against orthodoxy and superstitions of Islam. He promoted both Western and Islamic education. He established many schools and colleges.

Contribution of Maharashtra for the Emancipation of Women :

1. Paramhans Sabha - In the 19th Century the social reformers of Maharashtra started many movements to arouse consciousness in the society. Pranhans Mandali was established in 1849 A.D. It started socio-religious reforms movement in Bombay (Mumbai). The main aim of it was to condemn idol worship and caste system. This Sabha established many schools for the education of women. It also established institutions for imparting education at night. Jyotiba Phule opened a school at Poona for low caste girls for the emancipation of women. He tried to improve the condition of widows. In 1856 AD. Government passed widow remarriage law. Another great reformer of Maharashtra was Gopal Hair Deshmukh. He was better know as 'Lokhitkari' – He condemned social evils and propagated reforms.

2. Prathana Samaj - Prathana Samaj was established in Maharashtra in 1867 AD. The popular leaders of this were Mahadev Gobind Ranade and Ram Krishan Gopal Bhandarker. They condemned caste system and child marriage. They were in favour of widow remarriage and also found federation for widow marriage. At many places educational institutions and orphanages were opened by them. In 1884 AD. Deccan Education Society was established which established deccan college at Poona.

Effects of Reform Movement

Due to the efforts of Indian reformers Government banned social evils through law. Special contribution was made for the mención of women :

1. In 1795 AD and in 1804 AD female infanticide was banned through law.
2. Lord William Bentick banned Sati System in 1829 AD through law.
3. In 1843 AD, Government abolished slavery in India.
4. In 1856 AD widow-remarriage was recognized through law due to the efforts of Ishwar Chander Vidyasagar a great reformer of Bengal.
5. In 1860 by passing a law Government fixed 10 years as the minimum age of marriage. Through the Sharda Act of 1929 AD age for the boys was fixed 16 years and that of girls was fixed 14 years.
6. Inter-caste marriage was allowed by the Government by passing a law in 1872 Ad.
7. In Wood's Dispatch of 1854 AD stress was made on women education.

POINTS TO REMEMBER

1. In the 19th century in the Indian society the condition of the women was pitiable.
2. Sati-system, female infanticide, Purdah system, child marriage, and polygamy system etc. evils prevalent in the society.
3. Indian social reformers played an important role in imparting education of the women and to end the evils prevalent in the society.
4. As a result of Raja Ram Mohan Roy's efforts, Lord William Bentick banned sati-system through act on 1829 AD.
5. Due to the efforts of Keshav Chander Sen the Government banned Polygamy through act of 1872 AD.
6. Dowry System was abolished through act of 1843 AD.
7. In Wood's Dispatch of 1854 AD stress was laid on women education.
8. The Propagators of Singh Sabha played an important role for uplift the women education and to eradicate the evils prevalent in the society.
9. Sri Satguru Ram Singh Ji condemned the use of excess money at the time of marriage and dowry system. The rituals of marriage were completed in just one and half rupee.
10. Swami Dayanand, Sir Sayyid Ahmad Khan, Swami Vivekanand, Keshav Chander Sen and Mrs. Annie Besant etc. social reformers played an important role to reform the condition of women.



(A) Answer the following questions :

1. When and by whom was the Sati System was declared illegal ?
2. In which year was the permission for widow remarriage granted ?
3. When and by whom was the Aligarh Muslim University established ?
4. When, where and by whom was the Namdhari movement founded ?
5. Where did Singh Sabha established educational institutions for the women education ?

6. Write down in brief the contribution of Raja Ram Mohaj Roy for the emancipation of Women.
7. Write down in brief the contribution made by Ishwar Chander Vidyasagar to reform the condition of women.
8. Write down in brief the efforts made by Sir Sayyid Ahmad Khan for the improvement of the condition of women.
9. Explain the contribution by Swami Dayanand to improve the condition of women.
10. Explain the condition of women in the 19th century.

(B) Fill in the Blanks :

1. The women in Hindu society did not have the right to property.
2. After the sati of his brother's wife a new turn came in the life of
3. Due to the efforts of Keshav Chander Sen in 1872 AD.....was banned.
4. condemned divorce system.
5. joined Theosophical Society in 1886 AD in England.

(C) Match the Worlds :

- | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Swami Vivekanand | 1. Namdhari Movement |
| 2. Sri Satguru Ram Singh Ji | 2. Rama Krishan Mission |
| 3. Singh Sabha Movement | 3. Aligarh Muslim University |
| 4. Sir Sayyid Ahmad Khan | 4. Manji Sahib (Amritsar) |





Chapter
16

CHALLENGE TO CASTE SYSTEM

Caste System was not prevalent during Rigvedic times. Society was divided into four varnas on the basis of occupation. These four varnas were Brahamanas, Kshatriyas, Vaishyas and Sudras. But during the time of Rajputs the caste-system became quiet rigid, At that time society was not only divided into four varnas but into many castes and subcastes.

Brahmanas were respected in society while Sudras were treated badly by the society. They were not allowed to mix with the upper caste people. They were not allowed to take water from the public wells and ponds. They were forbidden to enter temples and reading the Vedas. Even the shadow of the suppressed lower caste, person could not fall on the upper caste people, if it was so he was beaten to death. That is why lower caste people were treated untouchable. They were forced to do the jobs like sweeping, shoe making, dispose of dead animals and to remove the skin of the dead animals, making leather etc. Many caste reform movements were started to end the atrocities committed by the upper caste people on the lower caste people. Many movements among them were led by Jyotiba Phule, Veereslingham, Sri Narayan Guru, Guru Periyar Rama Swami. Dr. Bhim Rao Ambedkar, Mahatma Gandhi etc.

In the 19th Century Christian Missionaries opened schools for children of the lower caste and tribal people. As a result the, children got a chance to progress their aims in the changing world.

Jyotiba Phule : Jyotiba Phule was a great reformer of Maharashtra. He started a struggle for the lower caste people. First, he opened three schools for the lower caste girls in Poona. Jyotiba Phule and his wife Savitri Bai themselves used to teach in these schools. They condemned the economic exploitation of lower caste people by the Brahmans and Priests in the names of rituals in their speeches and two published books. They advised the lower caste people to perform the marriage ceremonies without Brahmans and Priests.



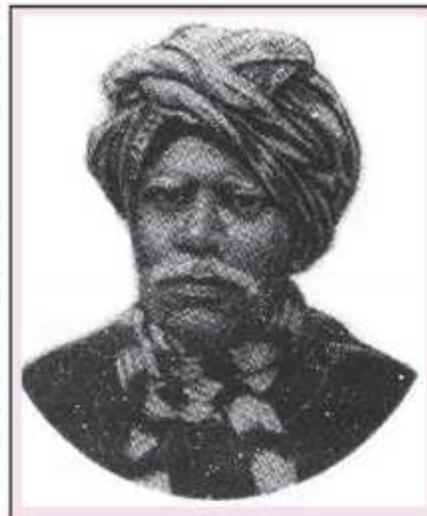
Jyotiba Phule

Jyotiba Phule established the association named Satya Shodhak Society on 24th September 1873 AD. This organization demand social justice for the lower caste people and condemned their social slavery. Poor farmers and craftsman appealed to government for reasonable taxes/lower taxes. Jyotiba phule was honoured with the Title “Mahatma” for his works for the lower caste people.

Veeresalingam

Kandukari Veeresalingam was another social reformer. He was a social reformer. Even during primary schooling he condemned the meaningless rituals and religious beliefs prevalent in the society. He started a struggle to give equal rights to women alongwith men when he was teacher in a school. He was in favour of inter-caste marriage. He condemned caste system and opposed untouchability.

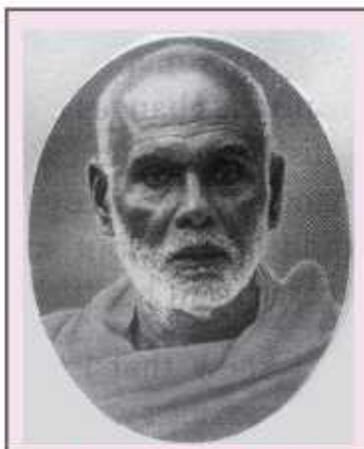
Veeresalingam propagated to eradicate caste system through his articles and plays. He always used to help lower caste and poor people. He struggle against child marriage and made many efforts for widow-remarriage. Veeresalingam contributed throughout his life to the improvement of the lower castes and for social reforms. This is why he is called the ‘Prophet’ of contemporary Andhra Pradesh.



Veeresalingam

Sri Narayan Guru

Sri Narayan Guru was a great reformer of Kerala state. He was born in 1856 in Ijhevaj caste. The upper caste people considered this caste as untouchable. Which is why Sri Narayan Guru struggled for his caste and other lower caste people. In 1903 AD he established “Sri Narayan Dharam Pripalana Yogam” to work for the social reforms. He opposed the distinction made on the basis of caste and religion.



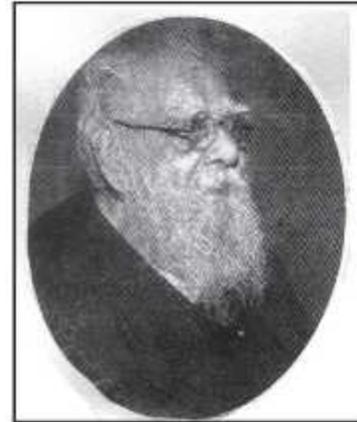
Sri Narayan Guru

Periyar Rama Swamy

Periyar Rama Swamy was a great reformer of Tamil Nadu. He was born on 17th September, 1879 AD in Madras (Chennai). Periyar Rama Swami, was belonged to middle class family. Earlier he was a Saint or Sanyasi. Later on he became a member of Congress party. But when he noticed different seating arrangement for upper

and lower castes in the function organized by the national leaders then he gave up the party. Now Periyar understood that the untouchables (Ashute) would have to fight for their rights. He felt that lower caste people are considered untouchables in the society. Besides this these people were forbidden to participate in the social rituals and traditions mixing with the other people and to get education. That is why for the welfare of the lower caste people he established Dravida Kazagam.”

This organisation tried to get reservation for the lower caste people in the government services. Due to these efforts the castes which discriminated, the first amendment was made in the constitution for the protection of their rights. To put an end to untouchability he started Satyagrah. In this movement national leaders like Mahatma Gandhi, C. Rajagopalachari, Acharya Vinoba Bhave participated. In this way reformer Priyar Rama Swami protected the rights of the lower caste people in Tamil Nadu.



Periyar Rama Swamy

Dr. Bhim Rao Ambedkar

Dr. Bhim Rao Ambedkar was born in a Mahar family. In his childhood he became aware about caste discrimination. He had to sit on the ground in the school. He was not allowed to take water from the pump. After his school education he went to America for higher education. He returned in India in 1919 AD. Dr. Ambedkar started 'Temple entrance' Movement in 1927 AD. In large number of Mahar caste people participated in this movement. Brahman priests were angered that lower caste people were using the drinking water in the temples. Ambedkar started three movements to enter the temples during the period 1927 to 1935 AD. Dr. Bhim Rao Ambedkar demanded justice for the lower caste people from the society and government. He started agitation and satyagraha to give reasonable social rights to these people. In 1918 AD, he demanded from the Southborough Reforms Committee to reserve seats in the legislative councils and central legislative councils according to population and to fix the separate electoral area. But the committee did nothing like this.

In 1931 AD Dr. Ambedkar gave suggestion for political right to the lower caste people in the Second Round Conference which was accepted to a certain extent in the communal awards issued by the British Prime Minister on 16th Aug. 1932 AD Dr. Bhim Rao Ambedkar

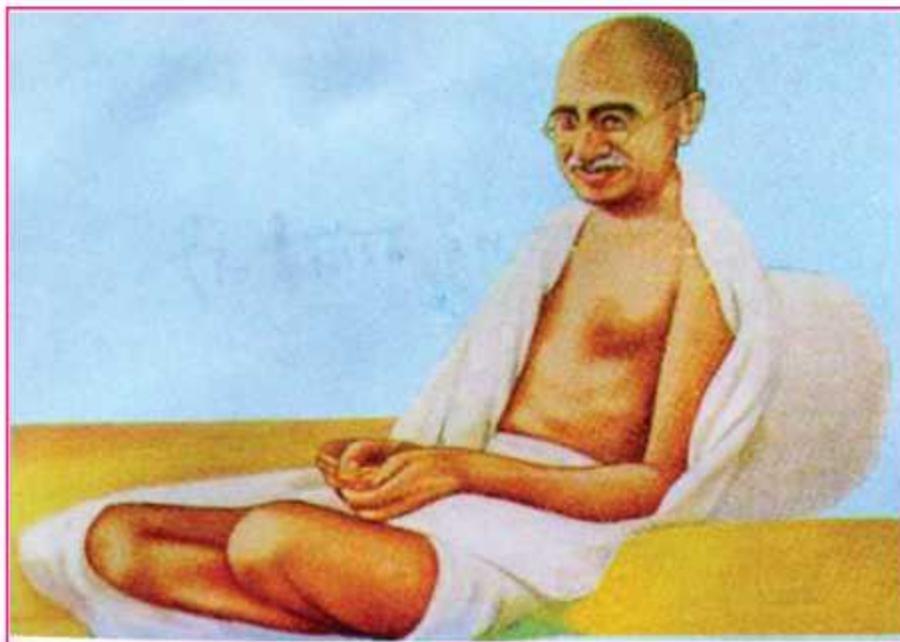


Dr. Bhim Rao Ambedkar

participated in the conference for the genuine social and political rights which were held in Nagpur and Khlapur. To further the cause of the lower caste people he established Bahishkrit, Hitkarni Sabha and Samaj Samat Sangha. He started the publication of the newspapers like Mooknayak, Bahishkrit Bharat and Janata. He started a satyagrah to allow the lower caste people to take water from public wells and to enter the temples. He established in Oct. 1936 A.D. an Independent Labour Party of India who got victory in 1937 A.D. He reserved seats for the lower caste people in Presidency Legislative Assembly Election. He organized the Labour Party and Scheduled Caste Federation. It is because of his efforts that provisions of special privileges were made in the Indian Constitution for the scheduled caste people and tribal people. Due to his efforts untouchability was declared illegal by the government.

Mahatma Gandhi Ji

Mahatma Gandhi Ji considered untouchability was a sin. Non-Cooperation Movement was launched in 1920 by the Mahatma Gandhi against the British government, in which there was an outline programme for the eradication of untouchability in society. Mahatma Gandhi condemned untouchability in 1920 AD in Nagpur conference which was held for the lower castes. But Mahatma Gandhi felt sorry that Congress did not try to eradicate untouchability from the society in their non-cooperation movement. This is why the lower castes did not participate in the non-cooperation movement. They considered British rule better than Hindu Swarajya.



Mahatma Gandhi Ji

After the postponement of non-cooperation movement, Mahatama Gandhi ordered the Congress to organize the lower caste people for their welfare, and also try to improve the social, mental and moral conditions of the lower caste people. They should be given all those facilities which are given to the other citizens.

From 1921 to 1923 AD, the Congress under their constructive programmes spent 49.5 lakhs but only 43,381 rupees were spent for the welfare of lower caste people. Although they did not participate in the non cooperation movement yet Gandhi Ji tried to improve the condition of the lower caste people.

Mahatma Gandhi Ji used the word “Harijan” for the lower-caste people instead of the word “Achhut, Panjama and Pariha, which means the children of God.” On 11th February 1933 AD Gandhi started the publication of a weekly newspaper, the aim of which was to improve the condition of the lower-caste people. On 7th November 1933 AD he started a march from the place Wardha for the welfare of the lower caste people, wherever he crossed, he asked the people to open schools, roads and public wells for the untouchables and treat every human being, equal. Some of the conservative Hindu People opposed the speeches of Gandhi and tried to throw a Bomb in Poona on him, which remained unsuccessful. During his tour he collected funds for the ‘Harijans.’

The Effects of Efforts of Social Reformers

Indian social reformers tried to eradicate the social and religious evils prevalent in the society. The results of their efforts are written below :

1. From the 19th century to 20th century there were evils prevailing in the society like sati system, female infanticide, caste system, dowry system, child marriage and ban on widow-remarriage etc. Many social reform movements like Brahamo Samaj, Arya Samaj, Namdhari Movement, Singh Sabha, Rama Krishana Mission, Aligarh movement etc. contributed an important part to eradicate these evils.
2. Due to the efforts led by the Indian social reformers, in 1829 AD Lord William Bentick declared sati system illegal. During his time he passed many laws against the female infanticide and human sacrifice. Widow remarriage was reorganized by passing a law in 1856 AD. Inter-caste marriage was allowed by passing a law in 1872 AD. Child marriage was declared illegal in 1891 AD by a law.
3. National consciousness developed among the people and made it possible to make a new India.

POINTS TO REMEMBER

1. Caste system prevalent during the Rig Vedic period became quite rigid during the time of Rajputs. The lower cast people were treated badly by society.
2. Many caste reform movements started to end the atrocities committed by the upper cast people over the lower caste people.
3. Jyotiba Phule, a great reformer of Maharashtra established the association named 'Satya Shodak Society. He opened three schools for the lower caste girls. He made efforts to improve the condition of poor farmers and craftsmen.
4. Veeresalingam social reformer was called 'The Prophet of contemporary Andhra Pradesh. He was in favour to give equal rights to women alongwith men, widow remarriage and inter caste marriage. He condemned caste system and opposed untouchability.
5. Shri Narayan Guru made efforts for the improvement of lower caste particularly Ijhevaj caste. He established 'Shri Narayan Dharam Pripalan Yogam' in 1903 AD.
6. Periyar Rama Swami, a great reformer of Tamil Nadu started Satyagrah to put an end to untouchability. In this movement national leaders like Mahatma Gandhi, C. Rajagopalachari, Acharaya Vinova Bhave participated.
7. Dr. Bhim Rao Ambedkar established Bahishkrit, Hitkarni Sabha and Samaj Samat Sangha for the welfare of lower caste people and started the publication of the newspaper like Mooknayak, Bahishkrit Bharat and Janta.
8. Mahatma Gandhi used the word 'Harijan' for the lower caste people, which means The Children of God.'



(A) Answer the following questions :

1. Write down in brief the work done by the Jyotiba Phule for the welfare of the lower-caste people.
2. Write in brief why caste-system was targeted by the social reforms ? Write in brief ?

3. Write down in brief the reasons why Veeresalingam is called the 'Prophet' of modern Andhra Pradesh ?
4. What contribution was made by Sri Narayan Guru for the welfare of the lower-caste people ?
5. Which word was used by Mahatma Gandhi for the lower caste people and what is its meaning ?
6. Explain the work done by Mahatma Gandhi Ji for the lower-caste people.

(B) Fill in the Blanks :

1. Society was divided into four classes - Brahman, Kashatriyas, and Sudras.
2. Jyotiba Phule was honoured with the title of
3. Dr. Bhim Rao Ambedkar established 'Independent Labour Party of India' in AD.
4. Mahatma Gandhi used the word 'Harijan' for the lower caste people, which means

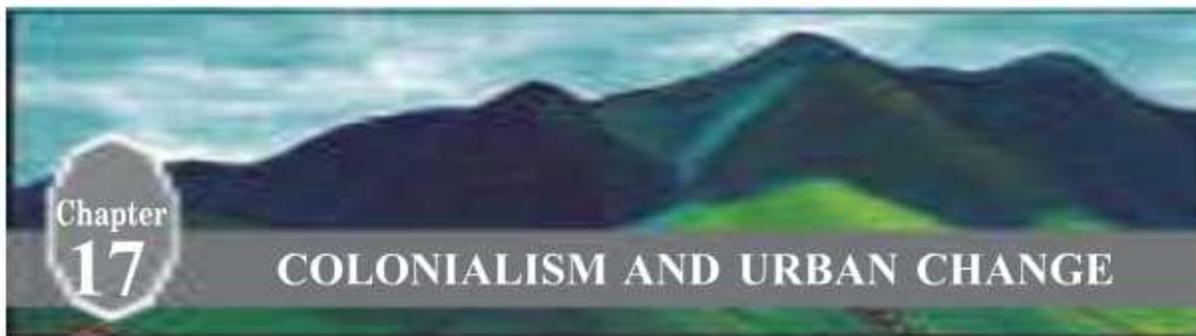
(C) Match the Worlds :

- | | |
|-----------------------|--|
| 1. Jyotiba Phule | Sri Narayan Dharam Pripalan Yogam |
| 2. Periyar Rama Swami | Prophet of Andhra Pradesh State |
| 3. Veeresaligram | A great social reformer of Tamil Nadu |
| 4. Shri Narayan Guru | Association named 'Stya Shodak Society.' |

Activity

Discuss about caste system with your class teacher.





Colonialism

The meaning of Colonialism is the political, economic and social control of a country over the other country or countries.

Urban Change

The meaning of urban change is the change in the status and importance of a city with the change in the political condition of the country.

Emergence of new town and cities

The new town emerge if they become the centre of political power, the Economic activities or religious activities.

If because of the change in the political power, rulers change their Capital then this some towns lose their importance and others take their place.

In ancient times, Harappa and Mohanjo-daro were the two prosperous cities but now these two are destroyed. Once Fatehpur Sikri was the capital of great mughal Emeror Akbar, it is a historical place. In this way, hundreds of towns are established but because of the loss of royal patronage they lose their importance.

In the same way in the 18th and 19th centuries the places related with Mughal commanders and Maratha sardars lost their importance due to the lack of royal patronage. During the British rule when Madras, Bombay and Calcutta emerged, many people started coming to these cities to live because they found more opportunities for progress here. Surat, situated on the Western Coast of India, was the centre of the traders from the ancient times. But when Bombay became the port and the centre of the political activities of the East India Company, the traders started living here because they found more opportunities for progress here.

In the same way after the battle of Plassey in 1757 A.D. and battle of Buxar in 1764, the importance of Murshidabad decreased and the importance of Calcutta, the Capital of East India Company increased. So with the expansion of the political power of the Britishers, the importance of their centres of administration increased. On the other hand the importance of the centre of Indian rulers decreased, because they lost the power.

Rise of New Towns

With the emergence of the East India Company as political power in India, many new towns came into existence like Bombay, Calcutta and Madras etc.

Madras

Madras is situated on the eastern coast of India. Its present name is Chennai. It is the capital of Tamil Nadu. Madras was one of the centre of the East India Company other than Calcutta and Bombay. It was the centre of the Presidency of East India Company. In 1639 the Britishers got the lease from the local Government and the centre of the company was established by Francis Day. In the first Carnatic war (1746-48) the french Commander La Bourdonnais took the possession of Madras. After the end of the war in 1748 AD, the Madras was returned to Britishers. With the Victory of the Britishers in the three Carnatic wars, Madras became an important and prosperous town.



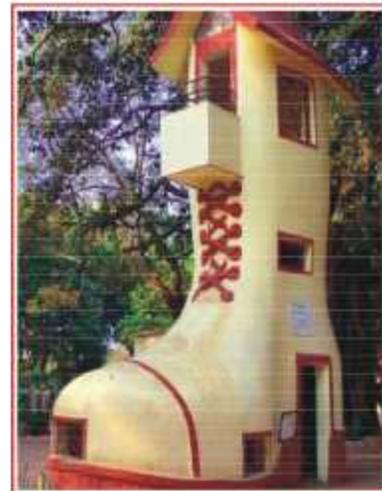
Madras High Court

Presidency : Colonial India was divided in Bombay, Madras and Bengal for the purpose of administration.

Soon Madras developed as a port city and a famous commercial centre. Here are many worth seeing places like churches, big buildings, memorials, beautiful temple. Madras High Court and beaches, which enhance its glory.

Bombay

Bombay is situated in Maharashtra. Its present name is Mumbai. It is also a commercial as well as trading and cultural centre. In 1661 AD Portuguese Queen Catherine got married to Charles II and this city was given to England in dowry. It was further given to East Indian Company on rent. Gradually Bombay became the presidency of Britishers. The famous places of this city are Juhu Beach, Chaupati, Kolaba, Malabar Hills, Jahangir Art Gallery, Museum, Bombay University, Maha Laxmi Temple, Victoria



Kamla Nehru Park

Garden, Kamla Nehru Park which enhance its glory.

Calcutta

Calcutta is the capital of West Bengal. Now-a-days it is known as Kolkata. During British times, it was a famous trading settlement. In 1695 AD Britishers established first factory here and fortified it. The East India Company devoted most of its time in the trading affairs till 1757 AD, when the war between Siraj-ud-daula and East India Company, then the settlements of Madras, Bombay and Calcutta became developed cities. Majority of the Indian traders started living in these cities because here they could get more trading facilities, With the defeat of the Nawabs of Bengal after the Battle of Plassey (1757 AD) and Battle of Buxar (1764 AD), the importance of the city of Calcutta increased. Today there are many sightseeing places like Howrah Bridge, Victoria Memorial, Botanical Garden, India Museum, Alipore Zoo, Vellore Math, National Library etc. which enhance its importance.

A Case Study-Delhi

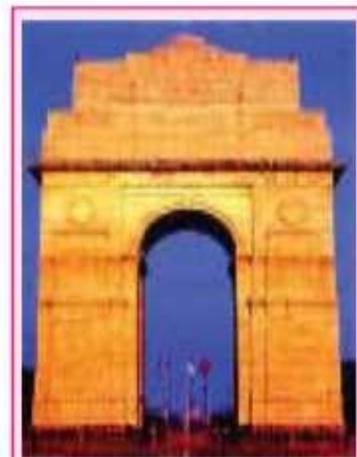
Presently Delhi is the Capital of India. It is situated on the bank of Yamuna. It is a famous city of India. In the epic era Delhi was Known as Inderprastha. Later on Mughal emperor Shah Jahan gave it a name Shahjahanabad. When Britishers made it their Capital in 1911 AD, they gave it a name, Delhi. Right from the beginning, Delhi has remained a centre of political, commercial and cultural activities of India. In medieval period it became very famous because Iltutmish made it his Capital. Later on it remained the Capital of all the Sultans of Delhi. During the time of the great Mughal emperor Akbar, Agra and Fatehpur Sikri remained the Capitals of Mughals, Rest of the Mughal emperors kept Delhi as their Capital that is why the importance of Delhi increased.



Parliament House, Delhi



Rashtrapati Bhawan, Delhi



India Gate, Delhi

In 1911 AD, the Britishers made Delhi the Capital of India in place of Calcutta. The famous places are Old Fort, Zoo, Appu Ghar, India Gate, Quila Rai Pithour, Fatehpuri mosque. The Dargah of Nizamudeen Aulia, Zantar Mantar, The Tomb of Behlol lodhi and Sikander lodhi. The Dargah of Qutub-ud-deen Bakhtiar Kaki, Parliament House, Rashtrapati Bhawan, Museum, Raj Ghat, Teen Murti Bhawan, Shakti Sthal, Shanti Van, Delhi University, Jawahar Lal Nehru University, Birla Mandir, Gurudwara Sheesh Ganj, Gurudwara Bangla Sahib etc.



Dargaha : Makbara of Sufi Saint

Dargah : Makbara of Sufi Saint.

Colonial Settlements and Implementation of policies

After the revolt of 1857 AD British Government, to consolidate their empire. Set up many institutions, municipalities, Public works departments, planning and net work railways. These institutions are still in existence with some changes.

Municipalities :

British East India Company for the first time set up Municipal Corporation in 1687-88 AD in Madras. Its members were nominated. After sometime Municipal Corporations were set up in Bombay and Calcutta. Gradually Municipalities and District Boards were set up for towns and villages in different provinces. These institutions opened Primary, Middle and High school in large number. Arrangements were made for the street lights at night and cleanliness for the city. People started getting water facilities. Dispensaries were opened in various cities where arrangement was made to prevent the diseases and for vaccination.

Public Work :

For the first time in British India, for public welfare, Lord Dalhousie set up a Public works department. This department got constructed roads, Canals and bridges. This department got built G.T. (Grand trunk) road from Calcutta to Peshawar. On 8th April 1853 AD, Ganga canal was constructed water released. An Engineering College was set up at Roorkee. This department did many other works for the welfare of the people.

Planning :

In the important cities of India during British times the Civil facilities and benefits were enjoyed by public. In most of the Indian cities supply of water, street lights, electricity in the houses, sewerage, modern markets, parks and play grounds were provided by the government.

Railway Lines :

During Lord Dalhousie's time in 1853 AD, the first railway line was laid from Bombay to Thana in India. In 1854 AD, railway line was constructed from Calcutta to Raniganj. There were main reasons for the construction of railway lines by the Britishers in India. The main reasons are written below :

1. British government considered the necessity of railways for the protection of the British empire and the movement of military.
2. The product made in the factories of England could easily be sent to the different parts of India through rail.
3. The British companies and capitalists could get profit by investing their surplus money in the railways.

Police :

During British times, Lord Cornwallis set up police department for the maintenance of Law and order in Country. Zamindars were relieved from police duties. In 1792 AD he divided Districts of Bengal into "Thanas". Every "Thana" was under a Daroga. "Daroga" worked under District Magistrate. In 1860 AD a Police Commission was set by the British government for uniform police arrangement in the different provinces of the country. On its recommendations the post of civil police, Inspector General of Police, Superintendent of Police and Assistant Police Superintendent in every district were created. Police Inspector and Head Constable used to work under a Police Superintendent. Mostly the British officers were appointed on these posts. This system of police department is still in practice with some changes.

POINTS TO REMEMBER

1. Being a political power East of India Company Bombay, Calcutta and Madras emerged in India.
2. Madras is situated on the eastern coast of India.
3. Madras developed as a port, an important town and a famous commercial centre.
4. Now-a-days Bombay is called, Mumbai. Mumbai is situated in Maharashtra which has many famous places.

5. Calcutta is the capital of West Bengal. Nowadays it is known as 'Kolkatta.' There are many worth seeing places.
6. Delhi is capital of India. There are many worth seeing places i.e. Rashtrapati Bhawan, Parliament House.
7. G.T. Road was built from Calcutta to Peshawar during British rule in India.
8. In 1853 AD the first railway line was laid by Lord Dalhousie from Bombay to Thana in India.



(A) Answer the following questions :

1. What do you mean by colonialism ?
2. Which new towns came into existence with the establishment of East India company ?
3. Name the famous places of Madras.
4. Write down the names of the famous places in Bombay.
5. Where and when did the Britishers established their first trading factory in India ?
6. In which three cities were the municipalities were established in India during British rule ?
7. Which British officer established public works department in India ?
8. Which Governor General started the department of police in India ?
9. When and by whom the first railway line was made in India ? What was its route ?

(B) Fill in the Blanks :

1. In ancient period and Mohenjodaro were two developed towns.
2. was the capital of the emperor Akbar.
3. is presently called Chennai.
4. Lord set up police department for the maintenance of law and order.

(C) Match the Words :

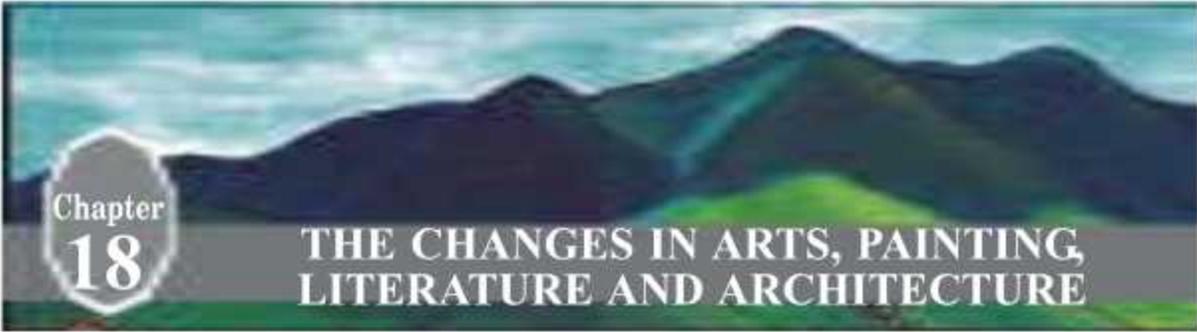
A

1. Delhi, during the reign of Shah Jahan
2. Engineering college
3. Capital of West Bengal
4. Delhi in epic

B

- a. Inderprastha
- b. Kolkata
- c. Rurki
- d. Shahjahanbad





Chapter
18

THE CHANGES IN ARTS, PAINTING, LITERATURE AND ARCHITECTURE

Painting, Literature, Architecture, Music, Dance and Theatre, these performing art forms have a glorious past in India. In the middle of the 19th century and the beginning of the 20th century, there were political changes, which led to changes particularly in literature and performing arts like painting and architecture.

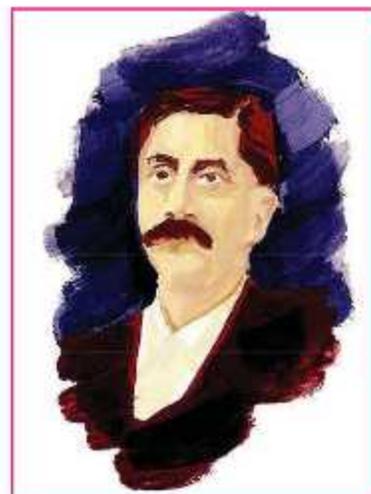
Development of Literature in 19th and Early 20th Century :

In the middle of the 19th Century and beginning of the 20th Century modern Indian literature like novel, story writing, literature, short stories, poem-composition, drama, theatre etc. made great progress.

Fiction

The most of the literature was written in Bengali language in the 19th Century. Bankim Chandra Chatterjee, Madhu Sudan Dutta, Sarat Chander Chatterjee were the great writers of Bengali literature modern era, Bankim Chandra Chatterji wrote a famous novel “Anand Math” which included many national anthem “Bande Matram”.

Madhu Sudan Dutta wrote “Meghnad Vadh” a poetic composition. Munshi Prem Chand wrote many novels in Urdu and Hindi language. He wrote “Godan” and Rangbhoomi novels. The writing of Hem Chander Banerji, Din Bandu Mitra, Rang Lal, Keshav Chandra Sen, Rabindranath Tagore etc. have filled the hearts of the people with great patriotic feelings.



Munshi Prem Chand

Short Stories

Rabindranath Tagore, Prem Chand, Yashpal, Jatindra Kumar, Krishan Chander etc. were great short story writers of India.

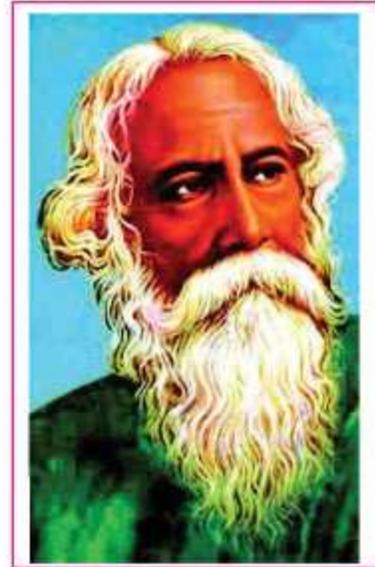
Poetic Composition - (poetry)

The famous (notable) Indian poets are Rabindranath Tagore (Bengali), Iqbal (urdu), Qazi Nazrul Islam (Bengali), Keshavsut (Marathi), Subramaniam Bharti (Tamil) etc. After 1936 AD. Faiz mazaaz (urdu) Jivan Nanad Das (Bengali), Aagia and Muktibodh (Hindi) etc. poets had introduced new types of compositions. After the Independence of India new compositions were composed by the poets like Raghubir Sahaya, Kedar Nath Singh (Hindi) Shakti Chattopadhyaya (Bengali) etc.

Drama and Theatre :

Indian artists and novelists tried to mix the western and eastern style in drama. The theatre association rendered a useful contribution in creating interest in novels and cinema, Girish Karnads (Kanada) Vijay Tendulkar (Marathi) etc. are regarded among great novelists. Mulkh Raj Anand, Raja Rao, R.K. Narayan also wrote novels in English.

Rabindranath Tagore was a great and popular novelist of this time. His compositions were the combination of old Indian traditions and the new awakening of the Europe. Through his writings he tried to lay a stress on national awakening and international Humanism.



Rabindranath Tagore

Growth of Press :

Before the British there was no printing press in India. Newspapers were written by hand during Mughal rule. Portuguese for the first time brought printing press in India in 1557 AD.

Many new newspapers started publishing in Calcutta and in other cities due to the liberal press policies of Lord Hastings. A famous journalist James Silk started the printing of the newspaper "Calcutta General" in 1818 A.D. At the same time G.C. Mashman also started publishing 'Darpan' and Dig Darshan in Serampur. In 1821 AD Raja Ram Mohan Roy started the publication of the 'Sambadh Kumudi' in Bengali and in 1822 AD "Mirt-ud-Akhbar" in persian, respectively. Fardunazi Murajban also started the publication of Gujarati newspaper 'Bombay Samchar.'

In 1881-1907 press made a tremendous progress. For example Bal Gangadhar Tilak published Kesari in Marathi and 'Maratha' in English. With the efforts of Ghosh Brothers the publication of "Yugantar" and "Bande Mataram" started which opposed the British rule. During this time many monthly magazines started publishing in 1899 AD

like “The Hindustan Review,” in 1900 AD The Indian Review and in 1907 AD “The Modern Review” etc.

The Development in the art of painting in 19th and beginning of the 20th Century :

Many changes occurred in the field of painting by the art schools and groups in the 19th and 20th Century. Their brief description is given below :

1. Raja Ravi Verma :

Raja Ravi Verma was well versed in the art of painting. He excelled not only in painting but also in the art of sculpture. He depicted the naturalism style of Europe with the themes of Indian myths and legends. The paintings made by him are related with the great epics and literature of India. He depicted the past of India through his paintings.

2. Bengal school of Art :

Rabindranath Tagore and Havel Kumar Swami flourished the Bengal school of art. The great painters of this school of Art painted many scenes based on old mythological stories, epics and classical literature. They made miniature paintings by using water-colours. Rabindranath Tagore used water colours with Japanese Technique. He set up Kala Bhawan at Shantiniketan.

3. Amrita Shergill and George Keyt :

Amrita Shergill and George Keyt were the great painters. They had better knowledge about the modern European art, the modern spirit and their modes of expressions. The oil paintings of Amrita Shergill had different titles and their colours were unique. They particularly depicted Indian women. The colour scheme used by George Keyt was very impressive.

4. Rabindranath Tagore:

Rabindranath Tagore’s paintings were based on his own experience. He made many great paintings with water colours and coloured chalks.

5. Famous Artists of Bombay :

Francis Newton Souza was the famous artist of this school. He made impressive paintings in colours and styles. The paintings of K.H. Ara are famous for their use of colours and uniqueness which included his flowers paintings and paintings related with women. S.K. Bakre and H.A. Gada and M.F. Hussain are the famous Bombay artists.

6. Baorda University's School of Art :

The famous artists of this school of art are G.R. Santosh, Ghulam Sheikh and Shanti Dev. Each student has his own unique style but modernity can be seen in each painter.

7. Madras School of Art :

This school of art made progress under D.R. Choudhary and K.C.S. Pannikar, after independence. The other famous artists of this school are Satish Gujral, Ram Kumar and K.G. Subramaniam.

Besides the above mentioned artists, the samples of modern art can be seen in the National gallery of modern art. The "Kala Academy" by providing different grants and scholarships to the artists has encouraged them.

Changes in Arts

Different performing arts mainly comprise music, dance and dramas etc. The Indians had rich heritage in these fields before the arrival of the Britishers.

Our country's music, both Karnataka and Indian school of Music, are an example of our great and rich heritage.

Our country's folk music and folk dances enthral everybody. Dances like 'Kathakali' 'Kuchipudri and Kathak' are examples of such dances.

Our dramas performed on stage and puppet shows are an important part of our cultural heritage. In India, we have various types of musical instruments like sitar, 'dhol', 'Tumbi', 'Sarangi' and Tabla etc. Among them 'flute', 'Shehnai', and Algoza are instruments which are called Aerophonic (wind) instruments.

In brief we can say that the different art forms (**Drama Music and Dance**) are glorious, unique and different in their styles. All these are the sources of enjoyment for the common man.

The great Indian artists like Kumar Gandharava, Ravi Shankar, Rukamani Devi, Ragani Devi, Udayshanker and Rabindranath Tagore have achieved great popularity in the field of music and dance.

Case Study - Mumbai and Chennai

Today Bombay and Madras are known as Mumbai and Chennai respectively. These two cities became large provinces during British rule. Soon these two cities became the big centres of political, commercial and cultural activities. These two cities made great progress in the field of different performing Arts (Music and Dance).

Bombay : In 1668 AD Bombay became the main hub of not only political, commercial but also of cultural activities. Because of the royal patronage given to this city, many new schools and colleges were established here. These schools and

colleges provided better educational facilities. All types of performing arts made all round progress here. With the introduction of new art of writing, there was a great spurt in the field of literature. And thus a new kind of literature, paintings and architecture developed.

The different examples of architecture of Bombay make us remember the colonial rule. All these buildings are mixture of Indian-European style.

Prince of Wales Museum :

Now the Prince of Wales Museum is known as 'Chhatterpati Shivaji Maharaj Vastu Sangrahalaya. It is located in southern Mumbai near Gate way of India. It was built in the beginning of the 20th century in commemorate the visit of Prince of Wales and the king of Briatain Edward VII in India. George Wittet, who was well known architect and engineer, was assigned to built this museum in 1909 AD. He got this buildings completed by 1915 AD. This building is a combination of the different elements of architecture. Three stories and a dome is built over it which resembles with the dome of Taj Mahal of Agra. The protruding Balconies and floors reminiscent of Mughal Palaces, not only this it also has artifacts of the Indus valley civilization and relics from ancient India.

Gate way of India :

Gateway of India is located near the Prince of Wales museum on the Coast of Arabian sea. This was built by the George Wittet and his friend John Bagg. This way built in commemorate of the visit of George V and queen Marry in India in 1911 AD.

Victoria Terminus :

This Victoria Terminus is now known by the name of Chhatterpati Shivaji, which was built in 1888 AD. This was named after the British Queen, Victoria, This was designed by the English architecture F.W. Strauss. It took almost 10 years to complete it. In March, 1996 AD it was named as "Chhatterpati Shivaji Terminus." On 2nd July, 2004 UNESCO included it in the list of world heritage.

Other Buildings of Bombay :

Besides above mentioned buildings, there are other important buildings in Bombay such as General Post Office, Municipal Corporation, Raja Bhai Tower, Bombay University, Elphine-stone College etc. These buildings were built in the 19th and in the begining of the 20th century.

Chennai :

As is discussed in the previous chapter that Chennai (Madras) was built in 1639 AD by taking land from the local ruler, In 1658 AD it flourished as a metropolitan

city and later on it was made a presidency. Chennai became a metropolitan city and was the centre of political, economic and cultural activities. All sort of art from southern Indian such as music and dance developed here. Many buildings were constructed in the middle of 19th and beginning of the 20th century. The visiting places located in this city are mentioned below-

Beaches of Chennai :

There are many famous beaches in Chennai. Among them the marina beach is most famous. This is 6 kilometers long. There are many famous buildings stand facing this beach there V.G.P. Golden Beach is another famous beach. Children come here in large number because of toy train.

Fort St. George :

Fort St. George was the first English Fort. It was built in 1639 AD and was named St. George. Soon it became the centre of trading activities of Britishers. It proved helpful to the Britishers to establish their influence in Carnatica. Today the legislature of Tamil Nadu state and its Secretariat and located in this building. The photographs of Tipu Sultan beautify the walls of this fort.

War Memorial :

The beautiful building of War Memorial is located in south of the fort St. George. This was built in memory of the martyrdoms of the first world war in 1939 in Chennai.

High Court :

The building of high court was constructed in 1892 AD in Chennai. This is world's second famous Judicial complex. The domes and the corridors of this are the fine specimens of Indian and European architecture.



Madras High Court

Other Buildings of British Era :

The other buildings of British Era are George Tower, St. Thomas Cathedral-Basilica, Presidency College, Ripon Building, Chennai Central Station, Southern Railway Headquarter etc.

POINTS TO REMEMBER

1. The painting, literature, architecture, music, dance and theatre have a glorious history in India.

2. Maximum literature was written in Bengali language in the 19th century.
3. Anand Math novel and Bande Matram song written in the novel in Bengali language by Bankim Chandra Chatterjee became very famous among the people.
4. For the first time Portuguese brought printing press in India to print the Christian literature.
5. Many newspapers and Magazines were started publishing with development of press.
6. In the 19th and 20th century modern Indian literature-novel, fiction, short story, poem-composition, drama, theatre made great progress.
7. Ravindra Nath Tagore set up Kala Bhawan at Shanti Niketan.
8. Folk songs and folk dances enthral every body.
9. UNESCO included the Victoria Terminus named as Chhatrapati Shivaji Terminus in the list of world heritage in 2004 AD.
10. Fort St. George was the first English fort in India.



(A) Answer the following questions :

1. Who has written 'Anand Math' ?
2. Who established the printing press in India and when ?
3. Which two newspapers Bal Gangadhar Tilak started publishing ?
4. Write down the famous painters of Art school of Baroda University ?
5. Write down the famous artists of Madras School of art ?
6. Write down a note on the literature of 19th and the beginning of the 20th century.

(B) Fill in the Blanks :

1. Much literature was written in language during the 19th century.
2. Bande Matram the national anthem was written by
3. Munshi Prem Chand wrote many novels in and language.
4. Amrita Sher Gill and were the great painters.

(C) Write 'True' or 'False' in the brackets given after each statement :

1. Prince of Wales Museum is known as 'Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj Vastu Sangrahalaya.'
2. Marina coastal is 10 kilometer long.
3. War Memorial is made in the memory of martyrdoms of the First World War.
4. The Legislature and Secretariat offices of Tamil Nadu are located in the Fort St. George building.

Activity

1. Write 'Bande Matram' national song on chart and sing it.
2. Make a chart of 'Jan, Gan, Man' the national anthem.
3. Collect more information about famous folk dances - Bhangra and Gidha etc. of Punjab.





Many political organizations were founded in many parts of India after the revolt of 1857 AD which was against the Britishers. Among them Bengal British Indian Society, British Indian Association, Indian Association and Bombay Presidency Association were the main associations. The main objective of these associations was to demand reforms in Indian administration and to get political rights for the Indians. But these associations proved to be a failure. After these associations Indian National Congress was founded in 1885 AD which played an important role in rousing the National Consciousness among the people.

Main Causes for Rise of National Awakening Among Indians -

In the second half of the 19th century, a national awakening started arousing among the Indians.

National awakening means a feeling among the citizens of the country that they belong to one nation.

There were many causes for the rise of national awakening in the Indians. Among these important ones are written below :-

- 1. Impact of the Great Rising of 1857 AD :** Indian people revolted to put an end to the Britishers rule in 1857 AD. Britishers suppressed this revolt and started making cruelties against the Indians that is why national awakening aroused among the people to get their country free from the British Raj.
- 2. Impact of the Administrative Political Unification :** Britishers established uniform administration and legal system in India. People living in different parts of India started feeling themselves as the citizens of one country and in this way the national feeling was aroused.
- 3. Impact of Socio-Religious Reform Movements :** Different socio-religious reform movements started in different parts of India in the 19th century. Some of the supporters of these movements like Raja Ram Mohan Roy (Brahmo Samaj), Swami Dayanand, (Arya Samaj), Sri Satguru Ram Singh Ji (Namdhari Movement) etc.

condemned the prevailing social evils. These supporters made people conscious about the socio – religious reforms to end these evils, which gave birth to national feelings.

4. Impact of Western Education and Literature : The ideas of Milton, Mill, Burn Rousseau, Voltaire and Macaulay aroused the feeling of national consciousness, liberty, equality and fraternity among Indians.

5. The Economic Exploitation of the Indians : The British traders used to buy the raw-material at cheap rates and send it to England and sell the finished goods of their factories on higher rates in India to get the maximum profit. So the wealth of India began to be sent to England and Indians became poor. Therefore, they were against the Britishers.

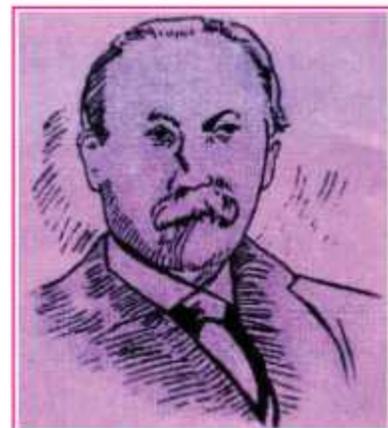
6. Not to Employ Indians on the High Posts : The Britisher's did not appoint Indians on the high posts on the basis of their ability. That is why a feeling of protest rose against the Britishers, Besides this the Indian employees were given less salaries and allowances in the company as compared to British employees. They tried to arouse the national feeling among the Indian people.

7. Impact of the Indian Newspapers and Literature : In India many newspapers such as Bombay Samachar, Amrit Bazar Patrika, The Tribune, Kesari, Magazines and books started publish Through these papers the national consciousness started arousing among the people. Besides this with the patriotic compositions of Bankim Chander Chatterjee "Anand Math" and his song "Bande Mataram became very popular among the people. The poems and articles of Rabindranath Tagore, Hem Chandre Benerjee, and Keshav Chander Sen aroused the national feeling among the people.

8. Protest Against Illbert Bill : Governor General Lord Ripon was the first British officer who had a soft corner for the Indians. He wanted to give Indian equal status along with Britishers. That is why he tried to pass the Illbert Bill. But Britishers protested against this bill. With this Indians went against Britishers.

The Establishment of Indian National Congress

Mr. A.O. Hume on 28th Dec., 1885 AD established Indian National Congress in Mumbai (Bombay) at Gokal Dass Tejpal Sanskrit College he was a retired I.C.S. officer. The first session of the Indian National Congress was held from 28th Dec to 30th Dec. in 1885 AD in Mumbai's Gokal Dass Tejpal Sanskrit College. It was presided over by Womesh Chander Bannerji. In this session 72 delegates participated who had come from different provinces of India.



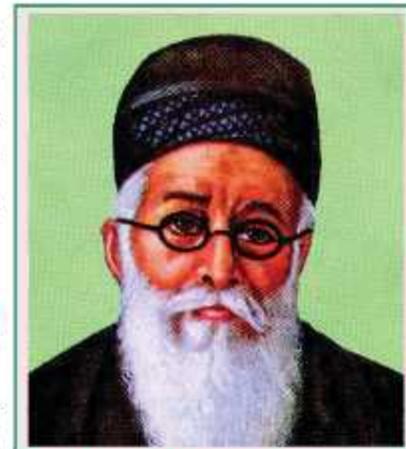
Mr. A.O. Hume

The Objectives of the Indian National Congress

1. To establish friendly relations with the people working for the welfare of the country.
2. To arouse the feeling of national unity by removing the feeling of casteism, regionalism and religious differences among the people.
3. To present memorandum and petitions before the govt. for the welfare of the people.
4. To get the suggestions for social and economic reforms in India.
5. To prepare the outline for the activities to be conducted by the nationalists for the coming 12 months.

Moderate Era (1885-1905 AD)

The era from 1885-1905 AD is called the moderate period because Indian National Congress during this period worked under the moderate leaders like Firoze Shah Mehta, Dada Bhai Naoroji, Surinder Nath Banerji, Gopal Krishan Gokhle, Madan Mohan Malviya etc.



Dada Bhai Naoroji

The Main Demands of the Indian National Congress

1. To give Indians the right to elect their representatives in the entral and provincial legislatures.
2. To appoint the Indians on the high posts on the basis of their ability.
3. To spread education in India.
4. To remove the just restrictions on the press.
5. To separate the executive from legislature.
6. To develop local institutions and should be given more powers than before.
7. To make an arrangement for the conduct of ICS examination in India like England.
8. To reduce the expenditure begin spent on military.
9. To reduce the land-revenue tax imposed on farmers.
10. To make proper arrangements for irrigation.

The programme of Indian National Congress

The Indian National Congress's moderate leaders used to put their demands before the government through speeches resolutions, proposals and petitions. They used to send their proposals after passing it in the Congress session.

National Movement 1905-1918 AD

The Partition of Bengal

In 1905 AD Lord Curzon partitioned Bengal. The main purpose of the partition was to divide the Hindus and Muslims and to weaken the national power. When government announced the partition of Bengal, people protested every where through meetings, processions and strikes. Swadeshi movement was started in protest against the partition of Bengal. After the partition of Bengal, two groups moderates and extremists (nationalist) established.

In the words of Surinder Nath Banerji, The announcement of the partition of Bengal make us feel as lightning had struck us. We feel as we have been humiliated, disgraced and betrayed.

Swadeshi and Boycott Movement

With the partition on Bengal in 1905 AD by Lord Curzon, the Swadeshi and boycott movements started in Bengal. This movement was led by great leaders like Surinder Nath Banerji, Vipin Chander Pal and Bal Gangadhar Talk. The main purpose of this movement was to use Swadeshi and boycott the foreign goods. The foreign clothes were set on fire at different places in India. Propaganda was made through the national newspapers to boycott the foreign goods.

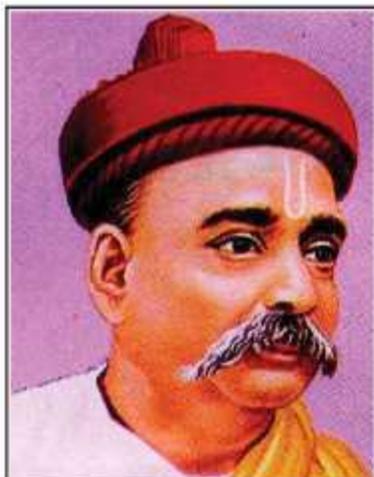
Rise of Extremism

The command of national movement was in the hands of nationalists from 1905 to 1919 AD. The moderates failed to get their demands fulfilled by the government. That is the why young demanded a strong political action.

1. In 19th century the economic policy of the Britishers in India proved helpful for the rise of nationalists.
2. The Indians living in England and South Africa were illtreated. That is why nationalists started a extremists movement to get India free from the British rule.
3. The Indians got inspired by studying the revolution of France, the American war of independence, the unification movement of Italy and they started the extremist movement on similar lines.
4. Lala Lajpat Rai, Bal Gangadhar Tilak and Bipin Chander Pal started movement of extremism. To arouse the national feeling among the people they held processions at various places and delivered speeches. Bal Gangadhar Tilk said ‘Swaraj is my Birth right and I shall have it.’



Lala Lajpat Rai



Bal Gangadhar Tilk



Vipin Chander Pal

According to Bipin Chander Pal. **“We do not want to maintain relations with Britishers. We want our own government in India.”**

The Formation of Muslim League

The Muslim leaders founded a separate political party named Muslim League on 30th Dec., 1906 AD whose main demand was a separate election commission for the Muslims. In 1909, government accepted thier demand.

Split in Indian National Congress 1907 A.D.

In 1907 A.D. the session of Indian National Congress was held in Surat. In this the moderate leaders condemned the proposals of Swadeshi and Boycott. The extremists did not like the objectives and policies of the moderates. So they started working separately to achieve their objectives. In 1916 AD the two groups of the Congress again got united.

Revolutionary Movement

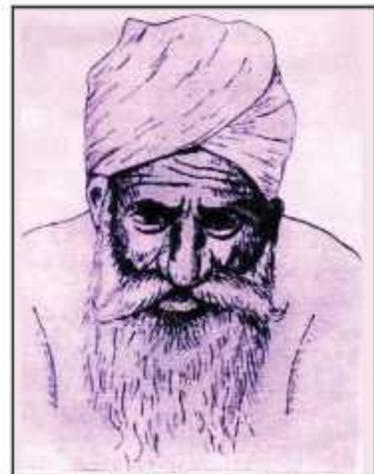
Due to the speeches and activities of the extremists the revolutionary movement was started in the various parts of India. Their main centres were in Maharashtra, Bengal and Punjab etc.

In Punjab the important leaders of revolutionary movement were Ajit Singh, Pindi Das ; Sufi Amba Prashad and Lal Chand Falak etc. Under their leadership many violent activities were done. Besides Indian revolutionary movements were started in England, America and Canada. As a result Shyamji Krishan Verma founded the Indian Home Rule Society in England. This Society became the centre of activities of the revolutionaries.

The Movement of Ghadar Party

Many Indians were living in America and Canada. But they were illtreated there. That is why they felt that they cannot get due respect in the foreign countries until they get their country free from the Britishers. So they planned a revolutionary movement to get their country free. In 1913 AD Indians living in America and Canada jointly formed Ghadar Party in San Francisco (America). Sohan Singh Bhakna was made the president of the party and Lala Hardyal was elected secretary.

The main aim of the organization was to free India by revolutionary activities. Ghadar Party started the publication of the newspaper 'Ghadar' to spread their ideas. In this newspaper, subject matter was related with



Sohan Singh Bhakna

the killing of the people loyal to Britishers, to raid government treasury, making of the Bombs, to explode the railway lines, cutting of the telephone lines and to encourage the soldiers to revolt.

POINTS TO REMEMBER

1. In the 19th century national awakening arose among the Indians.
2. Mr. A.O. Hume, on 28th December, 1885 AD established Indian Congress in Mumbai (Bombay).
3. The era from 1885-1905 AD is called the 'Moderate Period.'
4. Lord Curzon partitioned Bengal in 1905 AD. Its main purpose was to divide the Hindus and Muslims and to weaken the national power.
5. Swadeshi and Boycott Movements started in India with the partition of Bengal in 1905 AD.
6. The command of national movement was in the hands of nationalists from 1905-1919 AD.
7. The Muslim Leaders founded a separate political party named Muslim League on 30th December, 1906 AD.
8. Britishers adopted a stern policy to curb the extremists and revolutionary movement by passing Minto Malabar reforms Act.
9. In 1913 AD Indians living in America and Canada jointly formed Gadar Party in San Francisco (America) and Sohan Singh Bhakna was made the president of the party.
10. Annie Basant in Madras, Bal Gangadhar in pune founded the Home Rule Movement in 1916 AD.

Exercises

(A) Answer the following questions :

1. Where the first session of the Indian National Congress was held and under whose presidentship and how many delegates participated in it ?
2. When and under whose Governor generalship Bengal was partitioned ?
3. When and by whom the Muslim League was founded ?
4. When, Where and Who founded the Ghadar party ?
5. Write down a note on Swadeshi and Boycott.
6. Write a note on revolutionary movement.

(B) Fill in the Blanks :

1. Mr. A.O. Hume established Indian National Congress in Bombay in AD.
2. Lord Curzon partitioned Bengal in A.D.
3. said 'Swaraj is my Birth right and I shall have it.'
4. The session of Indian National Congress was held in AD in Surat.

(C) Match the Words :

A

1. Home Rule Movement
2. Muslim League
3. Ghadar Party

B

- a. Sohan Singh Bhakna
- b. Sir Sayyid Ahmad Khan
- c. 1916 AD.

Activity

1. Paste the pictures of leaders related with this lesson in scrap book and write about the activities performed by them.





Era of Mahatma Gandhi Ji

Mahatma Gandhi entered the Indian political arena in 1919 AD. So all the national movements which were launched for the Indian freedom from 1919 to 1947 AD were led by Mahatma Gandhi. So the period of 1919-1947 AD in India is called the Gandhian Era.



Mahatma Gandhi Ji

Mahatma Gandhi Ji was born on 2nd Oct., 1869 AD in the city of Porbander in Kathiawar (Gujarat) in the family of Diwan Karam Chand Gandhi. His mother's name was Putli Bai. After passing matriculation Gandhiji went to England for higher studies. In 1891 AD after his study of law he returned back to India. In 1893 AD he went to South Africa. There Gandhiji saw that the Britishers were ill-treating the Indians living there. Gandhiji condemned it. In 1915 AD Gandhiji returned back to India. At that time the first world war was going on. In this war the Indians helped Britishers. Therefore the British issued the Mantague-Chemsford report to please them. Based on this report an act was passed in 1991 A.D. In the preamble of this act it was said:

1. India shall remain a part of British state.
2. Responsible governance will be established gradually in India.
3. Indian people shall be included in every department of the Administration.

After the end of the first world war Britishers did not keep their promise, so Gandhiji started Non-Cooperation Movement against the injustice being done by the Britishers to the Indians. According to it Gandhi ji asked the people to boycott government offices, courts, schools and colleges.

Gandhi Ji called upon the villagers to use cotton clothes and to make the clothes through **charkha**. Not to use foreign clothes and use **swadeshi** (Indigenous goods).

Rowlatt Act

The Indians started protesting against the Britishers for the act of 1919 AD. To control the prevailing situation British government passed the Rowlatt Act in 1919 AD. According to this act the British government could arrest any person just on the basis of doubt (suspicion) without warrant and appeal. That person was not permitted to move court for appeal. Moti Lal Nehru condemned the act by saying 'No appeal, No Vakil', No dalil'. To protest against this act Gandhi Ji started satyagraha throughout the country.

The Jallianwala Bagh Tragedy

In 1919 AD to protest against the Rowlatt act strikes, demonstrations and processions were held in Punjab on the call of Gandhi Ji. On 10th April 1919 AD the famous leaders Dr. Kitchlu and Dr. Satya Pal, were arrested in Amritsar. Indians took out a procession to oppose it. Government ordered to open fire at the procession. As a result some of the people died. So by getting angry over this Indians killed 5 British officials. To control the situation, the government handed over the city of Amritsar to military, Nearly 20,000 people gathered in Jallianwala Bagh in Amritsar. On 13th April 1919 AD (on Baisakhi day) to protest against the Rowlatt act, General Dyer ordered to open fire at the people. The people started running to save themselves. But the exit of this Bagh was closed from three sides. Because of the military on the fourth exit The people were stucked. Within no time the whole of Jallianwala Bagh was full with blood and dead bodies all around. Because of this massacre 1000 people died and more than 3000 people were injured (wounded). On hearing the news of this tragedy the feeling of anger aroused in the hearts of the people against the Britishers.

ACTIVITY

To know more about Jallianwala Bagh Tragedy.

A case Study - The Khilafat Movement and Non-Cooperation Movement

After the first war the Britishers divided Turkey into many parts and arrested Calipha. So to protest against them Indian Muslims started the Khilafat movement against Britishers. This movement was led by Saikat Ali, Mohammed Ali, Aboul

Kalam Azad and Ajamal Khan. Mahatma Gandhi and Bal Gangadhar Tilak participated in this movement for the Hindu and Muslim.

Non-Cooperation Movement

In 1920 AD Mahatma Gandhi started a Non-Cooperation movement against the British government.

Mahatma Gandhi surrendered the title of Keser-I-Hind to the government. He requested the people to participate in the movement. Thousands of students stopped going to schools and colleges. They started studying in the national institutions like Kashi Vidyapeeth, Gujrat Vidyapeeths, Tilak Vidyapeeth etc. On the call of Mahatma Gandhi many people resigned from government services and surrendered their titles. Hundred of lawyers gave away their practice. The famous among them are Moti Lal Nehru, Dr. Rajinder Prashad, R.C. Dass, Sardar Patel, Lala Lajpat Rai etc. People boycotted foreign clothes and started using clothes made on charkha.

To suppress the movement government arrested the people in thousands. In a village Chauri-Chaura in Gorakhpur district, the session of congress was going on in which nearly 3000 peasants were taking part. Police fired at the peasants. In retaliation, the angry peasants attacked and set on fire the police station in which 22 policemen were killed So Gandhi Ji in Bardoli suspended the Non-Cooperation Movement.

Although Gandhi Ji postponed Non-Cooperation movement it had still a great contribution in the national movement. In this movement almost all the people participated, so the feeling of national consciousness aroused among the people. Women also participated in it and they became confident. The congress party became popular among the people due to this movement.

In 1922 AD Gandhi Ji called off Non-Cooperation movement. In 1923 A.D. Moti Lal Nehru and C.R. Dass established the Swaraj Party to get independence. The main aim of the party was to participate in the election and struggle for freedom. In the election of 1 November, 1923 AD of central assembly and state legislative assemblies Swaraj Party got significant success.

Gurudwara Reforms Movement or Akali Movement

From 1920 AD to 1925 AD, Gurudwara reform movement was started to get the Gurudwaras free from the control of the Mahants. This movement is called Akali movement, because Akalis made efforts to free Gurudwaras. The Akali started many campaigns (Morchas) to get the Gurudwaras free, some of the important ones are mentioned below in brief :

Main campaigns (Morchas)

1. The Nankana Sahib Morcha

The Mahant Narayan Das of Gurudwara Nankana Sahib was a man of bad character. To remove him from the Gurudwara a Jatha went to Gurudwara Nankana Sahib on 20th Feb., 1921 AD. The Goondas of Mahant Narayan Das attacked the Jatha. Bhai Laxaman Singh and his companions were burnt alive.

2. Keys Morcha

The Government had keys of the treasury of Sri Harmander Sahib (Amritsar). On 21st Nov. 1921 AD the Akalis demanded the keys but government refused to give it back. So Akalis protested against them and the government arrested Akalis. But Akalis kept on sending 'Jathas'. The government ordered Lathi charge. But Akalis did not loose heart. Soon on 17th Feb. 1922 AD, the government handed over the keys to the Akalis.

3. Guru Ka Bagh Morcha

The Management of Gurudwara Guru Ka Bagh was under Sunder Das. He was man of bad character. On August 1921 by sending a Jatha Akalis took over the charge of the Gurudwara. Sunder Das called the police and police arrested the Akalis. But Akalis continued sending Jathas. At last the government on 17th November 1922 AD handed over the keys to the Akalis.

4. Saka of Panja Sahib

When the Guru Ka Bagh campaign (morcha) was going on, one of the Jatha who was there to participate in the campaign was attacked and send them to jail. The Akalis of Panja Sahib asked for the train to be stopped and serve them food (langar). But government refuse to do so. Then Bhai Pratap Singh and Bhai Karam Singh laid before the train and got martyrdom.

5. Jaito Morcha

In 1923 the government removed the Maharaja Ripudaman of Nabha from the throne for helping Akalis. Akalis sent the jatha of 500 Akalis on 21st Feb. 1924 AD against the government. Government shot at the jatha as a result than 100 Akalis died and 200 Akalis got injured. At last in 1925 AD, the government handed over the Gurudwara of Jaito to the Akalis.

Simon Commisson

British government sent 'Simon Commission in 1928 A.D to india to enquire about the reform for the act of 1919 A.D. This Commission had seven members. but most of them was Indian. That is why Commission was welcomed with black flags and with the slogans "Simon Commission go back." Government lathi charged the people. As a result Lala Lajpat Rai got hurt and died.

Revolutionary Movement

Revolutionary movements started in India to get the country free from British rule. Babbar Akali movement was started in Hoshiarpur in Punjab in 1921 AD. Its founder was S. Kishan Singh and the main aim of the movement was to get Swaraj (self rule).

In 1926 AD Bhagat Singh, Rajguru, Sukhdev, Bhagawati Charan Vohra founded Naujwan Bharat Sabha in Lahore. This Sabha in 1928 AD Boycotted the Simon Commission. Police lathi charged the revolutionaries. Due to it Lala Lajpat Raj died. To take the revenge of Lala Lajpat Rai Bhagat Singh, Sukhdev and Rajguru killed police officer Saunders. On April 8, 1929 AD Bhagat Singh and Battukeshwar Dutt threw Bomb in central assembly in Delhi and raised the slogan of Inqalab Zindabad.' After this they surrendered to the police. On 23rd March 1931 AD government hanged Bhagat Singh, Rajguru and Sukhdev for killing police officer Saundrus.



S. Bhagat Singh

The Resolution of 'Poorna Swaraj'

On 31st Dec. 1929 AD Indian National Congress in their annual session passed a resolution of Poorna Swaraj. According to this resolution on 26th Jan. 1930 an independence day was celebrated in India.

Civil Disobedience Movement

To get freedom, Mahatma Gandhi launched Civil Disobedience Movement from 1930 to 1934 AD. To make this movement successful he started 'Salt Satyagraha' on 12th March 1930 AD with his 78 comrades he started march on foot from Sabarmati Ashram to Dandi. On 5th April 1930 AD, he broke the salt law in a village Dandi which was situated on the coast of the Arabian sea by making salt from the sea water. The people throughout India broke the salt law by making salt like Gandhi Ji. Where the salt could not be made there other laws were



Dandi March by Mahatma Gandhi Ji

disobeyed. Thousands of students left the schools and colleges. People resigned from government jobs. Women also participated in the movement. They took part in picketing shops, selling liquor and foreign clothes. Government to suppress this movement, the government declared Indian National Congress illegal and arrested many Congress leaders. Police opened fire at many places. But government proved failure to suppress the movement.

Round Table Conference

To discuss the report of Simon Commission in 1930 AD British governments called upon the first round table conference. But this conference failed due to the boycott of the Congress. On 5th March, 1931 Gandhi - Irvin Pact was signed between Gandhi and Lord Irvin. In this pact, Gandhi Ji agreed to stop the Civil Disobedience Movement and to participate in the second round conference. On Sept. 1931 AD in the second round table conference, Gandhi Ji demanded to establish the administration represented by Indians at centre and state level but the British did not accept his demand. As a result Gandhi Ji had to relaunch the non cooperation movement on 3rd January 1932. This is why Gandhi Ji and other Congress leaders were arrested.

In 1932 AD, the British government established separate electoral system for Harijans. But Gandhi Ji opposed this system. Later on in Sept. 1932 AD in Poona Gandhi Ji and leaders of the scheduled caste, Dr. Ambedkar reached on an agreement for the welfare of the scheduled castes. In 1932 AD third round table conference was held, in which Congress did not participate. In 1933 A.D. Congress suspended Civil Disobedience Movement and in 1934 AD it was called off.

Second World War and Cripps Mission

On sept., 1939 second world war started without consulting Congress leaders, government made an announcement of the India's participation in the war. The Congress leaders condemned the announcement and resigned from the state legislative councils. So British government on march 1942 sent Cripps Mission under Stafford Cripps. He put some of the recommendations before the Congress leaders which could not satisfy them.

The Demand of Pakistan by Muslim League

On 23 March, 1940 AD Muslim League in its session at Lahore demanded the independent Pakistan on the basos that Hindu and Muslims are two separete nations. Britishers also supported them because they wanted to weaken the national movement.

Quit India Movement

After the second world war, Gandhi Ji launched Quit India Movement on 8th August 1942 AD. On 9th Aug, 1942 AD the government arrested Gandhi Ji and other leaders of congress. After hearing this news, people at various places, attacked police stations, government buildings and post offices and railway stations. But British government failed to suppress the activists.

Azad Hind Fauj

Subhash Chandra Bose was another famous leader of the national movement. In 1939 AD because of ideological difference with Gandhi Ji, he left congress. In March 1941 AD he left India and in 1943 AD he reached 'Tokyo' (Japan). He founded the Azad Hind Fauj 'to get India free from Britishers. In it were Indian soldiers who were imprisoned by Japan in the second world war. Subhash Chandra Bose raised the slogans 'Delhi Chalo' 'Give me blood, I shall give you freedom' and 'Jai Hind'. But in 1943 AD Japan was defeated in the second world war, So the Azad Hind Fauj failed to get freedom for India. In 1945 AD Subhash Chandra Bose was killed in an aircraft accident. Britishers arrested the soldiers of Azad Hind Fauj. That is why Indians observed Hartals and processions throughout the country. In the end, the Britishers released all the soldiers of Azad Hind Fauj.



Subhash Chandra Bose

Cabinet Mission

British government sent a three members Cabinet Mission to Indian in March, 1946 AD. Its head was Lord Pethick Lawrence. This mission discussed with the Indian leaders the main provisions of political power which were to be given to India. It suggested for the constituent assembly to be constituted, Indian constitution and interim government for India. So according to the suggestion an interim government was set up in 1946 AD under the leadership of Jawahar Lal Nehru. On 15th Oct, 1946 AD Muslim League also joined interim government.



Pt. Jawahar Lal Nehru

Indian Independence Act, 1947 AD and Partition of India

On 20th Feb., 1947 the Prime Minister of England Lord Atlee declared that British government will free India by 30th June, 1948 AD. Lord Mount Batton held a talk with the leaders of the congress set free India. He said that India would be set free. But will be divided into two parts - India and Pakistan. Congress leaders accepted this partition.

On July 1947 AD British (English) Parliament passed the Indian Independence Act. As a result British rule came to an end in India. On 15th August, 1947 AD India got free, but with this the country was a divided into two parts. One was named India and other Pakistan.

POINTS TO REMEMBER

1. Mahatma Gandhi Ji came back from South Africa in 1915 AD.
2. Mahatma Gandhi Ji started Satyagraha against of Rowlatt Act in 1919 AD.
3. On 13th April, 1919 AD the General Dyer ordered to open fire on the people gathered in the Jallianwala Bagh in Amritsar. As a result about 1000 people died and more than 3000 people were injured in this massacre.
4. Mahatma Gandhi and Bal Gangadhar Tilak Participated in the Khilafat Movement for the Hindus and Muslims.
5. In 1920 AD Mahatma Gandhi started a Non-Cooperation Movement against the British government against injustice and cruelty with the people of Punjab and Khalifa of Turkey. After joining in this movement the people boycott the government jobs, titles and educational institutions and set up national institutions.
6. During 1920-1925 AD Gurudwara Reform Movement was started to get free the Gurudwaras from the control of the Mhants. The Akalis started many campaigns to get the Gurudwaras free and in the end they succeeded.
7. Gandhi ji withdrawn the Non-Cooperation Movement due to the event of Chauri-Chaura.
8. In 1928 AD Indians boycotted the Simon Commission with black flags. Police lathi charged the revolutionaries. As a result Lala Lajpat Rai died.
9. On 23rd March, 1931 AD government sentenced to death Bhagat Singh, Rajguru and Sukhdev to death.
10. In 1929 AD Indian National Congress in their annual session passed a resolution of Poorna Swaraj. On 26th January, 1930 AD an independence day was celebrated in India.

11. In 1930 AD Gandhi started Dandi March and on 5th April, 1930 AD broke the salt law.
12. In 1934 Civil Disobedience Movement was withdrawn by Mahatma Gandhi.
13. In 1940 AD Muslim League demanded an independent Pakistan.
14. In 1940 AD started Quit India Movement.
15. In 1943 AD Subhash Chandra Bose founded the Azad Hind Fauj in Japan in 1945 AD Subhash Chandra Bose was died in an aircraft accident.
16. In 1946 AD a Cabinet Mission came to India.
17. On 15th August, 1947 AD India became independent, but with this country was divided into two parts - India and Pakistan.



(A) Answer the following questions :

1. When and from which country Mahatma Gandhi Ji came back to India ?
2. What do you mean by 'Satyagraha' Movement ?
3. Where and when Jallianwala Bagh tragedy occurred ?
4. Write down the names of the persons who left their law practices during the non-cooperation ?
5. Write down a note on Simon Commission.
6. Write down a note on Quit India movement.
7. Write down a note on 'Azad Hind Fauj' ?

(B) Fill in the Blanks :

1. Mahatma Gandhi started Movement in India against the Rowlatt Act.
2. Mahatma Gandhi Ji postponed the Non-Cooperation Movement in
3. Nanakana Sahib Gurudwara's Mahant was characterless person.
4. There were members of Simon Commission, which was set in India in 1928 A.D.
5. On 26th January, 1930 AD an day was celebrated in India.

(C) Write 'True' or 'False' in the brackets given after each statement :

1. Mahatma Gandhi Ji surrendered the title of Keser-I-Hind to the government.
2. Swaraj Party was established by Mahatma Gandhi Ji.
3. Bhagat Singh and his companions founded Naujwan Bharat Sabha in 1926 AD.
4. On 5th April, 1930 AD Mahatma Gandhi Ji broke the salt law in a village Dandi by making salt from the sea water.

(D) Match the Words :

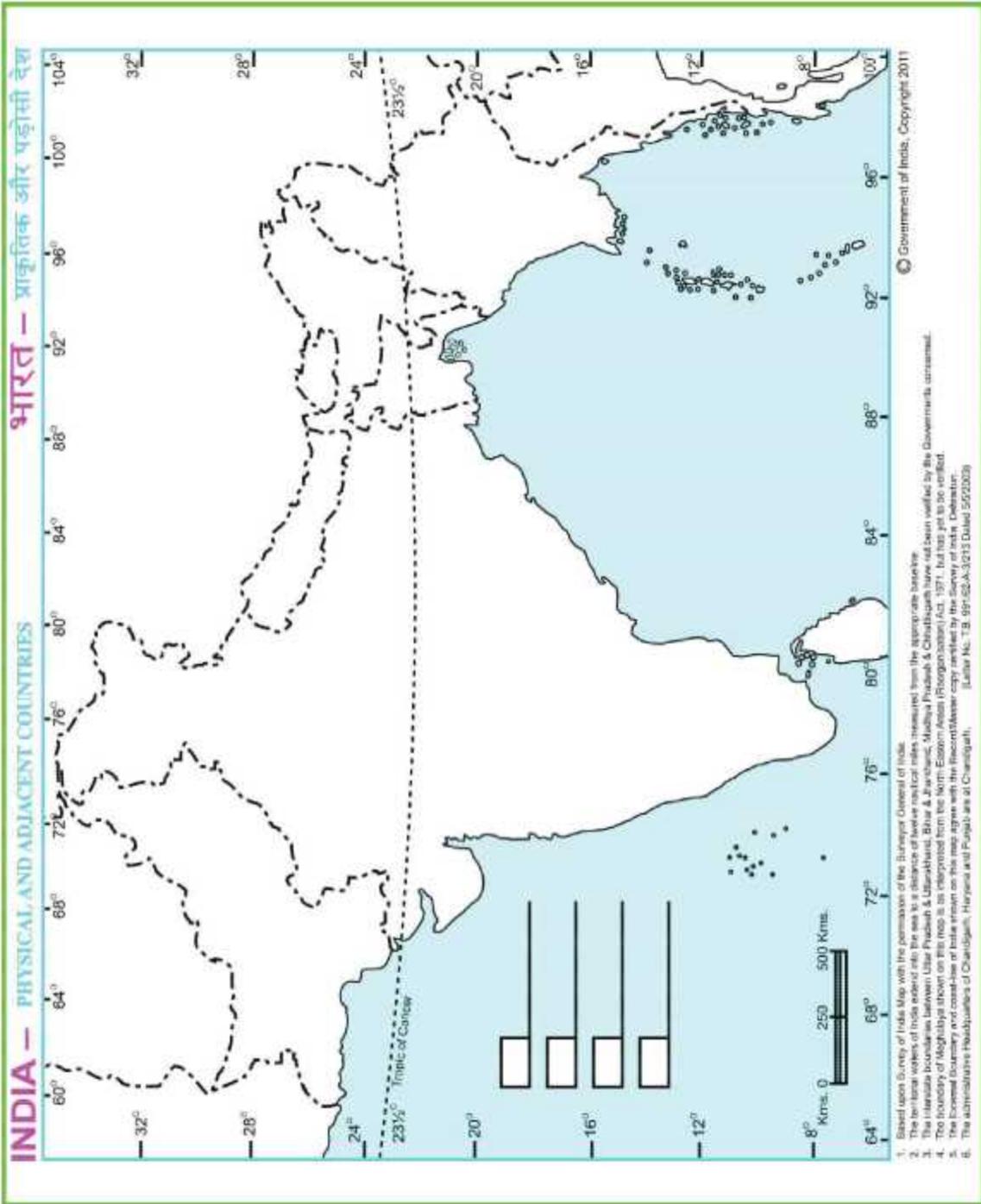
A

1. Non-Violence
2. Quit India Movement
3. Revolutionary Movement
4. Jaito Morcha

B

- a. Maharaja Rupindman Singh
- b. Mahatma Gandhi Ji
- c. On 8th August, 1942
- d. Sardar Bhagat Singh





INDIA - PHYSICAL AND ADJACENT COUNTRIES

भारत - प्राकृतिक और पड़ोसी देश

Name Class Roll No. Teacher Signature

© Government of India, Copyright 2011



NATIONAL AND REGIONAL DEVELOPMENT AFTER 1947 AD.

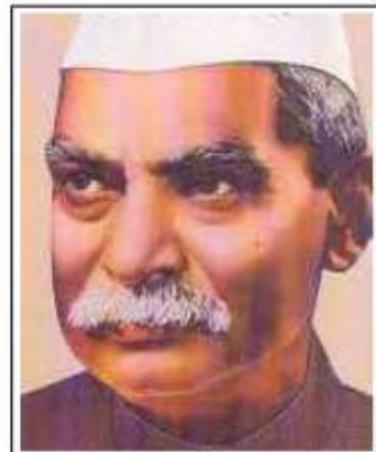
The Indian constituent assembly started making a new constitution in July 1946 AD which was completed. On 26th November 1949 AD, India got independence on 15th August 1947 AD but the merging of the Indian princely states was a major problem. Sardar Patel solved this problem properly. Later on reorganization of Indian states was done in 1956 AD. After getting independence, India made a good progress in the field of trade and agriculture. We will get detailed information about it later in this chapter.

The Making of the Constitution

After getting independence, India started drafting the constitution. For this, seven member committee was constituted. To it, a work to draft the constitution was given. Dr. Ambedkar was made the president of the committee. This committee drafted the constitution on 21st Feb. 1948 AD and presented it in the assembly. A discussion over the draft started on 4th Nov. 1948 AD, 11 meetings were called for the discussion. During



Dr. Bhim Rao Ambedkar

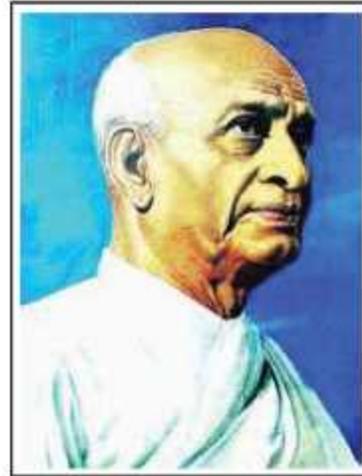


Dr. Rajinder Prasad

discussion 2473 amendments were presented. Some of them were accepted. On 26th Nov 1949, constitution was passed which was implemented on 26th Jan 1950 AD. According to it Dr. Rajinder Prasad was elected the first president of India.

2. Unification of the Native States (Princely states)

India had to face many difficulties after getting freedom, one of which was the problem of native-states (Princely states). They were 562 in number. Over which the Indian rulers used to rule. According to the Act of 1947 they were allowed to either retain their freedom or they can join either India or Pakistan states. That is why the rulers of these states preferred to remain free. But the first Home-minister of India Sardar Vallabh Bhai Patel made these Indian rulers agreed to join Indian Federation. Out of these, smaller states were merged with the province. Some of the others which were culturally alike and those which had common border were joined together and made a state, like Saurashtra with Kathiawar state and Patiala, Nabha, Faridkot, Jind and Malerkotla states were merged and PEPSU state was formed.



Sardar Vallabh Bhai Patel

The Nizam of Hyderabad Nizam Usman Ali Khan refused to join Indian Federation which is why on 13th Sept., 1948 AD police was sent to Hyderabad and state was merged into Indian Federation on 17th Sept., 1948 AD.

Like, the Nawab of Junagarh wanted to join Pakistan. But on 20th Feb. 1948 AD referendum was made in which the public expressed their will to join India, so the Junagarh state was included in the Indian Federation.

Like this, the ruler of Kashmir state also wanted to remain free. But Pakistan wanted to occupy Kashmir. The ruler of Kashmir asked for help from India and requested to merge his state with India. Indian government accepted the request of the ruler of Kashmir and Indian army reached Kashmir. War took place between India and Pakistan, but Pakistan occupied a large part of Kashmir. The part of Kashmir which is with India made great progress.

The Indian govt. felt that the small states are going to progress less this is why they were merged with adjoining states. Baroda was merged with Bombay (Mumbai) province. Many smaller states were joined together and a unified state was formed.

In March, 1948 AD, Bharatpur, Dhalur, Alwar and Karoli were joined together and a federation was formed. Later, the Rajasthan federation was also formed in which Boondi, Talwara, Pratapgarh, Shahpur, Banswara, Kota Kishangarh etc. states were included.

Getting Indian Regions free from the French and Portugueses :

Portuguese ruled over Indian Goa, Daman and Diu. French used to rule over Pondicherry, Chandernagar and Mahi. In 1954 AD French handed over their Indian areas but Portuguese did not do the same. What is why Indian government had to take military action against Portugueses. As a result Goa, Daman, Diu and Dadra and Nagar Haveli were included into Indian Federation on 20th Dec. 1961 AD, Goa was made a state on 30th May 1987 AD. Daman and Diu were given the status of union territory. Now in this way India has 28 states and 7 Union Territories.

Reorganization of States :

During British rule, Indians started demanding the states on the basis of language and culture. After the independence of India, a Tamil named Ramalu, to fulfil the demand of reorganization of states on the basis of language took fast until death and died, that is why Telgu speaking areas were separated from Madras and were named Andhra Pradesh. Like this a commission was appointed for the reorganization 'of states' which had three members. According to the recommendations of the commission 6 union territories and 14 states were formed on November, 1951 AD.

India's Foreign Policy

After independence India adopted a foreign policy based on peaceful co-existence. India respected the sovereignty and independence of the countries of the world India believes that all the people of different religions, nations and castes are equal. India was against those countries whose government distinguished the people on the basis of caste, colour and creed. For example India was against the South African govt. Who adopt a policy of discrimination between African and Asian people. India believes that all the international disputes can be solved peacefully.

Panchsheel :

In 1954 AD India signed an agreement with the Premier of Zhou Enlai of China. This agreement was based on the five principles, which are written below.

1. Peaceful Co-existence
2. Non-aggression.
3. Non-interference in each others internal matters of each other's.
4. Equality and cooperation for the protection of mutual interests.
5. Respect for each other's territorial integrity and sovereignty.

Bandung Conference

The first prime minister of India, Pt. Jawahar Lal Nehru, participated in Afro-Asian Conference in Bandung Indonesia in 1955 AD. In this China's, Zhou-Enlai and

Indonesia's Sukarno and many representatives of Asia and African countries took part. The Panchsheel was also discussed in this conference.

Non-Aligned Movement :

Soon after the end of the second world war, the major countries of the world were divided into two opposite groups. The first group which was being represented by American was known as Western Block. The second group whose leader was Russia was called Eastern Block. Cold War started between these Blocks. Besides this many military alliances and agreements like South-Eastern Asian treaties, divided many countries among different groups. India did not want to get involved in any of the power block.

This is why India adopted the policy on non aligned movement with the help of the other countries whose founder was Pt. Jawahar Lal Nehru, the president of Yugoslavia Mr. Tito, and the president of Egypt Mr. Nasser.

The Non-Aligned movement was started in 1961 AD. It was based on the principles of panchsheel. The members of this movement did not want to ally with any of the power blocks. That is why the first conference was held in Belgrade in 1961 AD. It had twenty five members initially, now it has over 100 members. India has been an active member of this movement.

SAARC :

SAARC was established in 1985 AD. The meaning of this is South Asian Association for Regional Cooperation. The main objective of it is to create economic and regional cooperation. India is playing an important role in SAARC.

India and U.N.O. :

India is one of the active member of U.N.O. India has served U.N.O. through its military in Korea and in many other countries in its peace keeping missions, Indians have served in many of the organs and major agencies of U.N.O. For example Mrs. Tharoor has served as representative as under- Secretary for communication and public information and in 2001 A.D for public Information department. India is also a member of security council. India has also got help from U.N.O.

India's Social-Economic Problems

The British policies had a bad effect on the economic system of India. India had to face many social and economic problems, which are posing obstacles on the way of progress and development of India. These problems are communalism, casteism, linguism, poverty, unemployment, illiteracy and growing population.

Communalism :

India is a secular country. People belonging to all the religions live here. They have different religious beliefs which have led to communal roits. Many people have the view that the government should pay attention to the minority. Which is why the prime minister of India S. Manmohan Singh in his speech on 9th December, 2006 expressed 'We will make a plan to give the due share of the development of India to the minorities.'

Illiteracy :

Approximately 230 million Indians are illiterate. After every 100 women, 60 women are illiterate. Illiteracy leads to unemployment which is the main cause of poverty.

Indian government is trying its best to eradicate illiteracy. There is a provision of compulsory education for the children of 14 years, in our constitution. Indian government gives scholarship to the poor and intelligent students.

Indian government also sponsored adult education programmes. National Adult education was started on 2nd Oct, 1978 AD. In 1988 National Literacy Mission was started. Many adult education Centers have been established in different parts of India. For the illiterate adults many educational programmes are being telecast on All India Radio and Television. The main purpose of these is to make every illiterate a literate.

Casteism :

Casteism is an another problem for the national unity of India. The upper caste people always look down upon the lower caste people. The Article 17 of the constituion ban untouchability in any form.

Linguism :

People speaking different languages live in our country. People living in different areas speaking different language consider their language superior, but we should respect all the languages.

The Problem of Poverty :

Poverty has been a major problem in our way to progress. The main causes of poverty are growing population, lower agricultural production and unemployment.

The Problem of Unemployment :

The number of unemployed has been increasing day by day. The ex-servicemen military officials, literate unemployed are being encouraged to start their business by providing loans. The retirement age is being reduced. So that maximum people could get employment. In villages for raising allied occupations like dairy farming, poultry, and piggery training and loan facilities are being provided.

The Problem of Price-Rise

Today price-rise is an international problem. But it has taken a giant shape in India. Price rise is day to day problem. So the government should start in the country such plan which should prove to be beneficial to the common man.

The Growing Population

Today, India is facing the problem of over-population which the government is finding difficult to control. Over-population leads to increase in problems of unemployment and poverty, which leads to failure of many government schemes. Rise in population is being resolved at government level. Doctors have been given the responsibility of creating awareness among people about the threat it poses to both family and country.

Economic and Industrial Growth

The partition of India increased its economic problems. The major Indian areas famous for wheat and rice went into the hands of Pakistan. Major portion of the irrigational agricultural area passed to Pakistan. That is why there was a shortage of food in India. Same way many hectare of land growing jute and cotton were included in Pakistan. That is why India's Industries face shortage of raw-material of jute and cotton.

After the India's independence, Indian government started efforts to reform the economic system of the country. Planning Commission was set-up in 1950 AD by the Indian government.

Agriculture :

India is an agricultural country. Food crops are grown on 75% of the agricultural land. Rice, Wheat, Maize, Mustard, Groundnuts and Sugarcane are important food crops. Many dams were built over major rivers for the development of agriculture such as River-valley Projects like Bhakra Nangal Project, Damodar Valley Project., Harike Project, Tungbhadara Project and Nagarjuna Project etc. The farmers have been taught the new methods of agriculture. They have adopted the modern methods of irrigation.

The government provides good quality of seeds and fertilizers to the farmers. The Poor farmers are given loans through banks. In this way government is trying to improve the condition of the farmers.

Industry :

After getting independence India started increasing the Indian industries. Many factories were set to make the things related with engineering, electricity, computer and things related with computer, medicines and implements related with agriculture. Many foreign companies have set up their big factories in India. These factories give employment to many skilled and semi-skilled workers.

Indian's Relation with other Countries

India tries to establish friendly relations with the other countries of the world particularly its neighbouring countries. India respects inter-national laws and customs. India wants that the international disputes should be solved peaceful means.

India and Pakistan

Pakistan is one of our neighbouring countries. India is trying to have friendly relations with Pakistan. Pakistan did not recognize the merger of Kashmir with India. Kashmir is the major problem of dispute between India and Pakistan. Even with the efforts of India and many other countries, U.N.O. and other agencies, Kashmir has remained a major cause of dispute between India and Pakistan. There have been three major wars and many other border fights between India and Pakistan. Among them the Kargil dispute is the popular one.

After the war between India and Pakistan in 1971, an agreement was signed between the prime minister of India Mrs. Indira Gandhi and th prime Minister of Pakistan Mr. Zulfikar Ali Bhutto in Shimla. The main objective of it was to solve the dispute between India and Pakistan peacefully. An agreement was signed between the prime Minister of India Atal Behari Vajpai and the prime minister of Pakistan Nawab Sharif in Lahore having same objective. Recently a bus service and rail service have been started between two countries. A friendly relation has been established between the people of these two countries.

India and China :

India and China have friendly relations with each other since ancient times. These two countries came closer due to trade and Buddhism. India was the first country to give recognition to govt. of China after the communist revolution in 1949 AD. India supported for the membership of China in U.N.O. India signed an agreement with China in 1954 AD on the basis of principles of Panchsheel. A war was fought between India and China in 1962 over boarder disputes. After this war, friendly relations could

not be maintained for a long time. There was an improvement in relations between India and China in 1980 AD. The Prime Ministers of India and China have discussed about the many problems through regular and continuous meetings.

India's Relation with U.S.A.

U.S.A. is a super power among the great nations of the world. Its relations with India have not been constant and simple. Sometimes these were good and bad. After the independence of India over the issue of Kashmir and many other causes, relations between these two became worse. The causes of the bad relations between these two countries are written below :

1. United State started giving extra military help to Pakistan. India strongly protested against it but United States did not bother about it.
2. Pakistan became a member of military alliances of U.S.A. so India refused to be the member of these alliances.
3. When there was a war between Pakistan and India and Bangladesh was about to created, at that time U.S.A. tried to interfere on the side of Pakistan against which India protested.
4. U.S.A. established military base camps in Pakistan. U.S.A. has established its military base camps in Diago-Mauritius Island in the Indian ocean. India protested against these bases because of security reasons.
5. India and U.S.A. has fundamental disputes over nuclear power. India its increasing its nuclear power and U.S.A. has stopped the supply of Nuclear fuel.
6. India has not signed C.T.B.T., because this is not based on moral principles. This treaty discriminatreaty this banned non-nuclear power countries to have nuclear power. On the contrary, is no such ban on nuclear power countries.

No doubt the above mentioned facts and situations has strained the relations of India and U.S.A., but because of these reasons still relations both of these countries could not worsened they have cooperated in Economic Technological, scientific and cultural field the relation between India and Pakistan improved during the tenure of Bill Clinton in 1993 AD. U.S.A. has been helping India in economic field also. In the present times the relation at govt. and trade level between India and U.S.A. is going smoothly. The U.S.A. and its economic agencies are playing an important part in India's Economic and fiscal system. We hope good relations in the near future.

POINTS TO REMEMBER

1. Indian Constitution was implemented on 26th January, 1950 AD. Dr. Rajinder Prasad was elected the first President of India.
2. Sardar Vallabh Bhai Patel made these Indian rulers agreed to join in India Federation, The first home minister of India.
3. On 17th Sept. 1948 AD police was sent to Hyderabad state and merged it into Indian Federation.
4. On 20th Feb. 1948 AD Junagarh state joined India by referendum was made which the public expressed their will to join India.
5. According to the recommendations of the commission 6 union territories and 14 states were formed on November, 1956 AD.
6. On 20th Dec. 1961 AD Goa, Daman, Diu and Dadra Nagar Haveli etc. Portuguese settlements were merged into Indian Federation.
7. The first conference was held in Belgrade in 1961 AD. It had twenty five members initially, now its has over 100 members.
8. SAARC was established in 1985 AD.
9. The relations between U.S.A. and India reformed while Bill Clinton elected the President of U.S.A. in 1993 A.D.



(A) Answer the following questions :

1. When constituent assembly was constituted ? And How many members it had?
2. When the constitution of India was passed and implemented ?
3. Who is given the credit for the unification of the Indian princely states ?
4. How was Hyderabad state was merged with India ?
5. How many member were in state reorganization commission ?
6. Write down any two principles of Panchsheel.
7. Where and when the first conference of Non-alignment was held ?

8. Write down a note on Non-Aligned Movement.
9. Write down a note on the foreign policy ?
10. Write down a note on Communication ?
11. Explain in brief the relations between India and Pakistan.

(B) Fill in the Blanks :

1. was made the President of the committee to draft constitution.
2. Dr. Rajinder Prasad was the first of India.
3. In 1954 AD hand over Pondicherry, Chandernagar and Mahi India territories to India.

(C) Write True or False in the brackets given after each statement :

1. After getting independence, India constituted a committee of seven members for the drafting of Constitution.
2. In the end of 1948 AD India occupied the French and Portuguese settlements which were situated in India.
3. After the independence, Indian government did not pay any attention towards her industrial development.

(D) Match the Words :

A

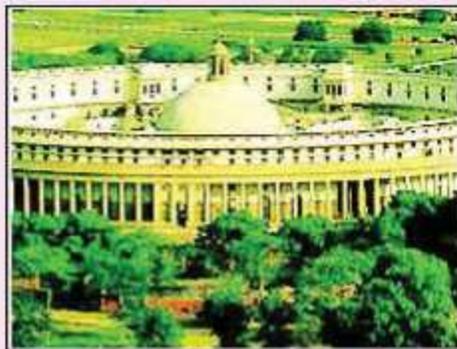
1. The first Home Minister of India
2. Members of India Constitutions Committee
3. Dispute of Kargil

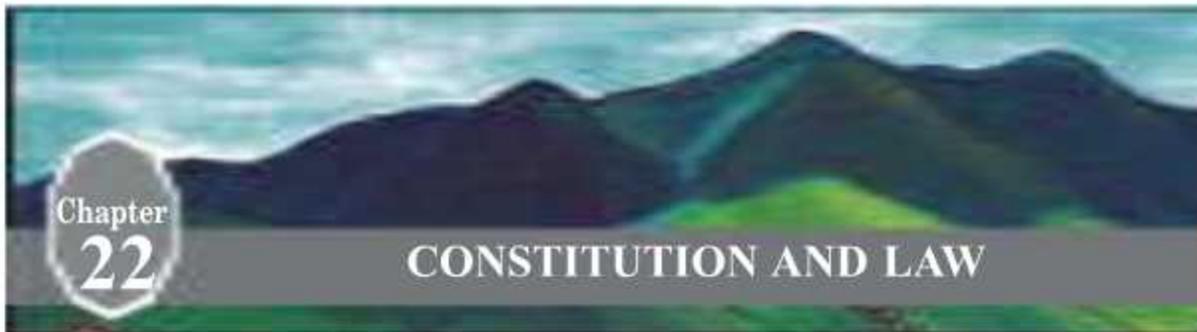
B

- a. Seven members
- b. In 1999 AD
- c. Sardar Vallabh Bhai Pate



Social and Political Life





After a long period of struggle for freedom, India became independent on 15th August 1947. But this independence was incomplete, because India was still to be governed by the constitution and law which were the ones framed by the British Parliament to suppress the Indians. Thus, there was an urgent need to frame a new constitution of an Independent India in order to make it successfully independent nation.

Constitution (meaning) :

Constitution is a legal document according to which any country is governed. The centre as well as the state governments are all run according to the constitution. The government of a country runs according to the constitutional provisions.

The Constitution is supreme law of the country

A constitution committee was framed after the independence of India. Dr. Rajendra Prasad was appointed as an acting president of the committee. Afterwards, this constitutional committee was made Sovereign.

Manuscript Draft Committee :

A seven member committee was framed on 29th August 1947 under the leadership of Dr. B.R. Ambedkar to give a complete shape to the constitution. This manuscript committee studied the constitutions of many other countries of the world. It borrowed certain principles from the constitutions of other countries. The constitution committee held eleven conventions. It took 2 years, 11 months and 18 days to complete the Indian constitution. It was ready on 26th Nov. 1949. The historical importance of 26th January (the importance of this day is "The Congress under the leadership of Pandit Jawahar Lal Nehru had passed the resolution of complete independence on 31st January 1929 on the banks of Ravi, at Lahore. It was also declared that Indians will celebrate the day of 26th January, 1930 as complete Independence day. From then onwards every year 26th January was celebrated as 'Independence Day'. Feeling the importance of this day the constitution



*Dr. Bhim Rao Ambedkar
Creator of Constitution*

was implemented on 26th January, 1950 although it was prepared on 26th Nov. 1949. The last meeting of constitutional committee was held on 25th January 1950 in which Dr. Rajendra Prasad was elected as first president of India. Thus on 26th January 1950. India became complete independent, sovereign democratic republic.

Law

As we have read above that constitution is a legal document. Law is essential to control and regulate our social life. The word law is derived from the tutonic word lag which means definite. Thus we can say that law means a definite rule. Our constitution endures the Rule of Law. Nobody is above Law.

Constitutional Role :

Man is a social animal. He lives in the society because of his nature and needs. He creates groups, communities and organizations. All these are made in accordance with law. Law is required to lead a civic life. Students ! just imagine a situation in which there is no law in your school, what will happen ? Nothing will happen in time like neither the morning prayers nor the studies, the games and any activity. The school will become a jungle. Thus we need law in order to control any organisation.

An evil of that has prevailed in the Indian society especially among the poor people in the practice of dowry. Poor people used to take loan, from the rich to give dowry, which ran through the generations. This was the prime reason for the illtreatment of women in the Indian society. This further lead to female foeticides. Thus, there was a sharp divide in the male to female ratio. Therefore government had to implement strict law against the practice of dowry. According to Dowry Prohibition Act of 1961, taking and giving dowry both ways is treated as offence. To eradicate this abuse of dowry, it should be implemented strictly and we all should cooperate.

Supremacy of Constitution : Constitution is considered to be the supreme law. All important officers of our government are solemnised an oath of alligiance to constitution before joining their office. All government and non-government organisations are being run according to the constitution. The judiciary has been constituted to maintain law and order. It has been made independent and unbiased. If any organisation is not run in accordance to the constitution, it is declared, unconstitutional.

Protection to Constitution : The judiciary has been given many power for the protection of the constitution. One such important power is the protection and implementation of constitution. This power implies that in case any law made by Legislature or any orders passed by executive council, do not abide by any section of the constitution, then judiciary has the right to declare such laws unconstitutional. Many steps have been taken to make the judiciary unbaised and independent, such as appointment of the judges, their salaries, tenure of service have been fixed differently than from the other government officials.

Constitution and Democracy : Citizen have been given many rights under the complete democratic set up of our country. Criticizing the government is also one such right. Wherever a government frames laws against the interest of the citizens, they are free of protest against it. Before 15 August 1947, though we were ruled by the British government, still citizens used to protest against the laws which were against their interest. Examples of such protests are opposing Simon commission and Jallianwala Bagh incident. In 1920, Mahatma Gandhi started Non-Cooperation movement, in 1930 civil disobedience movement and in 1942 Quit India movement.

During these movements, goods made by British companies and government were not used and clothes made by British companies were not worn. On the directions of Mahatma Gandhi, salt law was broken at the place called Dandi. Salt made at behalf of British government was destroyed. Orders were given to make salt by boiling the

sea water and use it. Even after independence many movements were taken out. Out of these movements prime movements was to boycott the use and sale of liquor. According to a survey every fourth person in our country consumes liquor. Approximately twenty five crore Rupees are being spent on Liquor daily. Many of state governments have banned use and sale of liquor. Although Gujarat, Haryana and Kerala have totally banned liquor in their states but these laws were not completely obeyed. Our government and society need to work on boycotting the evils like liquor and drugs.



Dandi March by Gandhi Ji

Therefore 'dissent' is an important feature of a democratic form of government. Without this dissenting voice a democratic government can become a dictator. Government and Society must have to make efforts collectively to overcome the menace of drugs, otherwise the Indian Society will be ruined.

Building Harmony with Laws

1. Group Work: What if there are no rules at school ? The teacher divides the class into four groups of students and asks the members to appoint a leader and brainstorm on the following scenarios :

What happens if...

- 1.1. there is no fixed time for the school to open and all students are free to attend classes any time they wish to
- 1.2. there is no fixed time or final bell remainder for the school to close and everyone walks out of the premises whenever they wish to
- 1.3. students walk in and out of classrooms and drop activities as per their whims
- 1.4. there is no fixed time or place for eating lunch and snacks and students are free to eat whenever and wherever they wish to
- 1.5. bullying (calling names, hurtful remarks, teasing, social exclusion, physical harm) are allowed)

2. Invite 1-2 group leaders to share their answers and summarise as below :

There will be great chaos in school if the students and teachers do not follow school rules. It is impossible for any institution to run without a set of rules and regulations that is respected by all its members.

Similarly, a Constitution is needed to run a country without which there will be utter chaos in the country. The Constitution protects everyone's rights and encourages everyone to abide by their duties.

Pointers to Prepare Rules

Cooperation and helping each other, sharing tasks.

No roaming outside the school premises or loitering around.

No physical and verbal bullying.

No harassment on basis of gender.

No using abusive language.

No copying during exams.

No stealing notebooks and textbooks.

No discrimination against other students based on their appearance, social status or gender.

No defaming any student through telling lies about her/him.

No littering.

POINTS TO REMEMBER

1. Constitution is a legal document, according to which the country is governed.
2. It took 2 years, 11 months and 18 days to complete the Indian constitution.
3. The constitution committee held eleven conventions.
4. The Indian constitution implemented on 26th Jan 1950.
5. Dr. Rajendra Prasad was elected as first President of India.
6. Law means definite rules.
7. The main cause of female foeticide is due to dowry system.
8. Citizen were given some rights according to constitution.
9. Mahatma Gandhi started many non-co-operative movements against British Government.
10. Salt law was broken at place named Dandi, by Gandhi Ji.
11. Gujarat, Haryana and Kerala has totally banned liquor by law in their states.
12. Anti-dowry Act came into force in the Year 1961.



(A) Fill in the Blanks :

1. The Constitution of India was Implemented on
2. was the first President of India.
3. The law against Dowry was enacted in
4. The Constitution of India was prepared in years months and days.
5. The main cause of foeticide is custom.

(B) Put a tick against the Right (✓) and a cross against the wrong (×) answer :

1. Gandhiji broke the salt law at Dandi.
2. The Judiciary does not protected the constitution.
3. The Rule of law runs through India.
4. To oppose bad laws is the feature of Democracy.

5. Laws are Indefinite rules.



(C) Multiple Choice Questions :

- 1. When was the Indian Constitution Implemented.**
(A) Nov. 26, 1949 (B) Jan. 26, 1950
(C) Jan. 26, 1930 (D) Jan. 26, 1949
- 2. Who was the chairman of the constitution draft committee ?**
(A) Dr. Rajendar Prasad (B) Dr. B.R. Ambedkar
(C) Mahatma Gandhi (D) Pandit Jawahar Lal Nehru
- 3. Who is the highest of the following in India ?**
(A) Prime Minister (B) President
(C) Judiciary (D) Constitution
- 4. State the number of draft committee members.**
(A) 11 (B) 18
(C) 7 (D) 02

(D) Answer the following questions in not more than 15 words :

1. What do you mean by Constitution ?
2. Why was the Constitution implemented on Jan. 26, 1950 ?
3. Write the meaning of word Law.
4. What is the importance of Law ?
5. What do you mean by impartial Judiciary ?

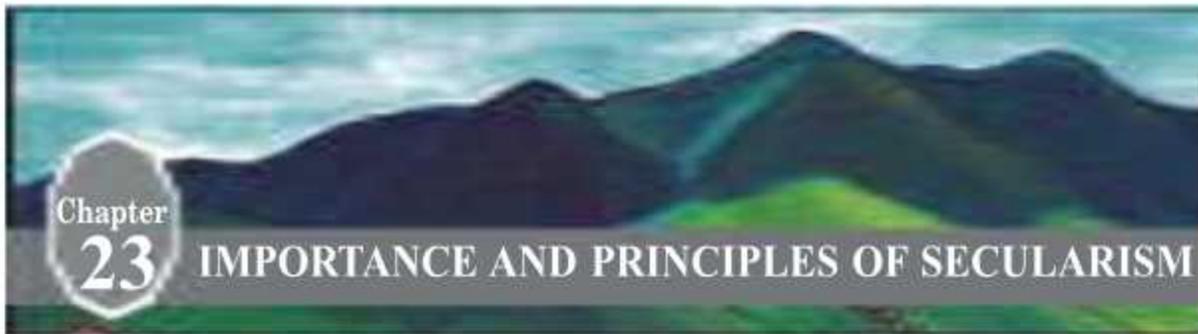
(E) Answer the following questions in 50-60 words :

1. What do you mean by the supermacy of the Constitution ?
2. How was the constitution of India formed ?
3. How has the Judiciary been made impartial in India ?
4. Which movements were started by Mahatma Gandhi against the British Government?
5. What is meant by prohibition and why should it be put into practice ?

Activity

1. Who does and What to Implement rules in school ? Discuss with the teacher.
2. If there is a change in the structure of the country, we shall have to bring about changing in the Constitution ?





The Indian constitution was implemented on 26th January 1950. Many guidelines were laid down before finalising the constitution. Constitution of every country has some basic principles. Chinese constitution is based on communism, while the American constitution is based on Liberal Capitalism. Although Indian constitution is not based on any particular governing principle but still the members of our constitutional committee has prepared it on the basis of varied basic principles.

Many basic principles have been incorporated in our constitution. One such basic principle of our constitution is Secularism. The main reason for incorporating secularism in our constitution was the slavery. All religions were not considered equal. We were also surrounded by the evil of caste discrimination for some years. Christianity emerged the main religion while at other time Muslim religion was prominent in the society. This religious fanaticism ultimately lead to the partition of our country in 1947. There were communal riots, murders, fights, over religion. Therefore, it became all the more important to incorporate secularism in our constitution. Thus under the circumstance it was essential for the constitution makers to follow the principles of secularism. A secular country is that where all religions are deemed equal. The secular country does not have any state religion and people are free to practice any religion. All people have religious freedom. In a secular country nobody will be discriminated on the grounds of the religion. One of the biggest example of secularism is that the Presidents in our country have been from different religions, the same is applicable for Prime Ministers and other posts.

Transformation of principles of the constitution into laws :

The preamble of the constitution is given in the beginning which includes the basic objectives and principles of the constitution. It is the key to the thought of constitutional committee. Principle of Indian constitution are sovereignty, Secularism, Right to freedom, Equality. Universal brotherhood and National unity and Democracy. These principles have legal significance.

First principle and object of Indian constitution is internal and external freedom. Now India is independent and free to manage its external affairs. Power lies with the people.

Justice

Ideals of our constitution is to provide social, economic and political justice to all people.

Social Justice : Social justice means there will be no discrimination on the bases of caste, creed and colour. In the III Chapter of our constitution first fundamental right, right to equality Article 14 to 18 removes all social inequalities.

Economic Justice : Concept of economic justice provides equal opportunities for all to earn livelihood and equal pay for equal work. Every individual would get adequate pay for the work done by him. Directive principles of state policy Article 36 to 51 are included in our Constitution to ensure economic justice.

Political Justice : Concept of political justice provides political rights to all without any discrimination. These are 1. Right to cast vote 2. Right to Contest election 3. Right to hold public offices 4. Right to criticise govt. 5. Right to form political parties 6. Right to petition.

Freedom

In the Preamble of the Constitution, right to expression of thoughts, faith and right to worship had been included, freedom has been secured as fundamental right. Citizens have been allowed to approach judiciary to materialise these fundamental rights.

Equality

Articles 14-18 of the Indian constitution state the right to equality in various manners. All are equal before the law. All the titles were abolished except the academic and defence title. No special right is given to people of particular caste, creed, community or any special section of society. Special provisions have been given to the judiciary to implement the right to equality, Judiciary has been given the right of judicial Review. Now all the citizens are equal in the eyes of law.

Brotherhood

Indian constitution encourages the citizens of India to spread universal brotherhood. The spirit of brotherhood must prevail among the Indians because people from different religions and communities reside here. Despite this, the main hindrance for the delay in Indian independence was the communal factors. Various sections in the Indian constitution tried to create equality among citizens in despite of their religion, caste, creed and sex.

National Equality and Unity

Founders of Indian constitution wanted national unity in India. To implement this objective, through the 42nd amendment of the constitution equality and fraternity, words have been added in the preamble. From this we understand that despite the fact that people from different caste, creed and communities reside in India, still they all work for the same purpose i.e. prosperity of the nation. To implement those objectives, constitution has laid various laws. These objectives are not only included in the constitution but laws also have been made. In case anybody breaks these laws, he/she is liable to be punished.

Indian constitution includes many objectives and principles. Many laws have also been laid to implement these objective. But even after 67 years of independence, we are failing to meet by the objectives. We still discriminate on the basis of caste, creed, religion and community. Some religious and social groups of society ask for separate nation even today.

Framework of Human Rights

1. Let's discuss the concept of human rights. The teacher is to display the six human rights on the classroom board and explain it to students.

What are Human Rights ?

Human rights are essential privileges with which people can live with dignity. There are close to 30 articles under human rights (according to the Universal Declaration of Human Rights at the United Nations); the six most relevant ones for adolescents being:

- a) the right to life, liberty, personal security
- b) freedom from torture
- c) a fair trial: meaning, fair court hearing facilities and strong justice system
- d) freedom of speech
- e) freedom of religion
- f) health, education and an adequate standard of living

Activity Table — Framework of Rights

My Human Rights!	Quite Happy	Can't say	Unhappy
1. EQUALITY Being treated the same as everyone around you in the			

<p>family, school and community.</p> <p>2. EDUCATION Being allowed to study and encouraged to pick subjects as you like in future.</p> <p>3. HEALTH Being fed nutritious food, vaccinated, taken to the hospital if needed.</p> <p>4. LEISURE AND SPORTS Being allowed to take enough rest from household tasks and display any sport of choice.</p> <p>5. FREE MOBILITY Being allowed to move around freely for study and fun.</p> <p>6. FREEDOM FROM TORTURE Being free from physical punishment, unpaid hard work, verbal abuse.</p>			
---	--	--	--

POINTS TO REMEMBER

1. Every country has some fundamental principles in their constitution.
2. Secularism means all religions are equal.
3. Every citizen has the right to freedom of religions without any discrimination.
4. In our Country, the Presidents were elected from all religions. It is a good example of secularism.
5. India is independent in foreign matters.
6. The main objective of Indian constitution is to give equal justice to all.
7. All are equal before law.
8. The objective of Indian constitution is to encourage the feeling of brotherhood.
9. The Indian constitution is abide to national unity and integration.

Exercise

(A) Fill in the Blanks :

1. Preamble of Constitution is also known as
2. The Rights are Included in the constitution of India from Article to
3. The word was added to the Preamble of the constitution by Amendment.
4. To treat all religions equal is

(B) Put a tick against the Right (✓) and a cross against the wrong (×) :

1. The Preamble begins with the word we, the people of India.
2. The word equality has not been included in the Preamble.
3. Discrimination can be made on the basis of Religion, Caste, Sex, Race.
4. The Right to vote gives Political Justice.
5. The Preamble appears at the end of the constitution of India.

(C) Multiple Choice Questions :

1. **In which part of the constitution of India are the Fundamental Rights Included :**
(A) Part-I (B) Part II (C) Part III (D) Part IV
2. **Where are the rules for Ideals are included :**
(A) In the Books of Law (B) In the Preamble
(C) In the Constitution of India (D) None of the above
3. **Which Article of the Constitution of India provides six kinds of freedom to the citizens :**
(A) Article 18 (B) Article 14 (C) Article 19 (D) Article 17

(D) Answer the following questions in not more than 15 words :

1. Write the meaning of Secularism.
2. Give an example of Secularism.
3. What is meant by the including of Rights in the Constitution ?

4. How have the Ideals included in the Preamble been achieved ?
5. What is Preamble ?

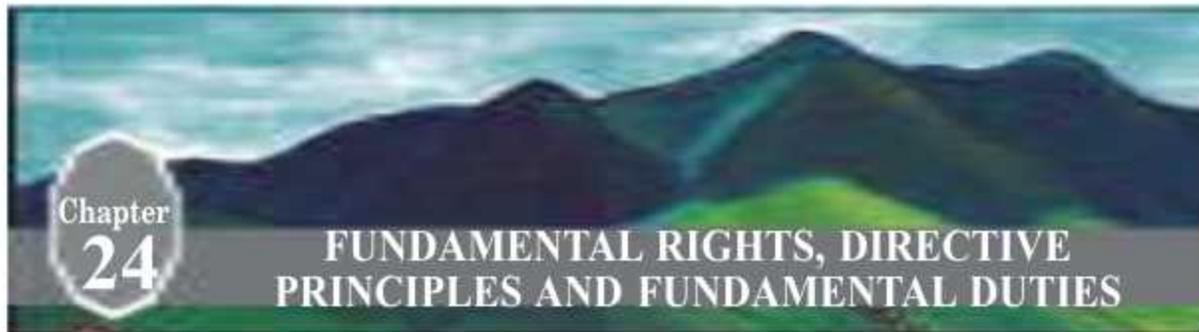
(E) Answer the following questions in 50-60 words :

1. What is meant by Justice ? How has this Ideals been implemented ?
2. What is meant by Equality ? Which equalities have been granted by the constitution of India ?
3. What is the Importance of Preamble of the Constitution ?
4. What is meant by National Unity and Integration ?
5. What is meant by Social, Economic and Political Justice ?

Activity

1. Put up a chart in your class room enlisting the principles of the Indian constitution.
2. Discuss about the importance of equality.





Human development requires some facilities. These facilities are provided by the society and these are known as rights. These rights are approved by our society. Rights are basically those basic needs of human beings which are essential for the development and welfare of our society. These rights must be considered important by the society.

There are many type of rights, out of which the most important are **Those fundamental rights** which are important for the mental, moral, cultural and physical growth of a person. Fundamental rights are those rights which are supreme and included in the Constitution. Provisions have been made in our Constitution to safeguard the fundamental rights. The Indian Constitution has taken 'fundamental rights' from the American Constitution. Fundamental Rights are given in the Indian constitution from article number 14 to 32. They are :

1. Right to equality
2. Right to independence
3. Right against exploitation
4. Right to freedom of religion
5. Cultural and Educational Rights
6. Right to Constitutional remedies
7. Right to Education

According to the amendment in the Indian constitution in December 2002, a new right called Right to Education has also been added.

Human Rights

These are those rights which tell us about the minimum basic right to lead a respectable life. Thus all those rights which enable human beings to lead a respectable life are known as Human rights.

Relationship between Rights and Duties

Rights and duties are related to each other. They are two sides of the same coin. Government and society has laid various rights for the prosperity of citizens so it also expects that the citizens should perform their duties towards it. If we do not fulfil our duties then we don't have any right of any kind. All the fundamental rights included in the Indian constitution also have duties along with in accordance with human rights.

FUNDAMENTAL DUTIES AS HUMAN RIGHTS

1. Right to equality : The fundamental rights are the right to equality. According to this right all the citizens are equal in the eyes of law. No discrimination is made on the bases of class, colour, caste and creed. It is our fundamental duty not to discriminate between anybody as even our law does not allow us. We should not believe in untouchability. We should not discriminate among the citizens on the bases of class colour, caste and creed.

2. Right to freedom : Second fundamental right of a citizen is right to freedom. Through this right we have various other rights like freedom of expression, thought, oration, to move around the country etc. It also provides us the right to do any kind of job or business. This right also expect from us to respect others right to freedom.

3. Right against exploitation : The third right is the right against exploitation. Under this right it prohibits trading of humans, forcing to work without salary etc. We do not have any right to exploit any human beings. We should not discriminate others on the basis of salary, working hours, child labour or on the bases of caste, creed or religion.

4. Right to religious freedom : One of the most important fundamental rights is the right to religious freedom. This right allows us to follow or have faith, preach and make religious place for religion of our choice. Thus it is our duty to respect all religious equally and not to hurt the religious sentiments of others.

5. Cultural and Educational rights : The right is made to protect independence of any language or culture. According to this right any good institute cannot discriminate in the admission on the basis of caste, creed, sex, color or religion. Thus it is also our duty to respect this law and do not discriminate in any manner. We should respect all languages cultures and religions. Government should also not discontinue in giving grants to such educational institutions.

6. Right to Constitutional remedies : Fundamental rights reminds us of our duties. In this fundamental right it is mentioned that we cannot deprive any citizen of his rights. If in case they are deprived of any of those rights, the citizens of the country are free to approach the judiciary.

RIGHTS TO EDUCATION :

First of all on 18th March 1910 Mr. Gopal Krishan Gokhle had presented resolution before the Imperial legislative Assembly to offer the free and compulsory education in India, but this resolution could not be passed. When India got freedom a discussion was held on this issue in the constituent Assembly. After discussion under Article 45 which comes under the chapter of Directive Principles of state policy, states were directed to provide free and compulsory education to the children upto 14 years of age within 10 years.

On December 2002 our parliament passed 86th Amendment. An article 21A has been entered in the chapter of Fundamental Rights Now every child has got the right to get free and compulsory education between the age group of 6 to 14 years. To implement the right to education an act was passed in 2009 by our parliament to provide free and compulsory education for all children between the age group of 6-14. Thus w.e.f. 2010 in all over India (except Jammu and Kashmir)

Example of equality - Rights are equal for all, from centuries our society has been discriminating people on the basis of colour, race or religion. Many races were considered inferior and were treated as untouchables. Now under the article 17 of our Constitution the discrimination of people on the basis of caste or race has been abolished. According to the article 15 of our constitution, no citizen may be discriminated on the basis of caste, colour or race. According to the article 25 of our Constitution no citizen can be discriminated on the basis of religion also.

These are many more such examples in our constitution which make it clear that all citizens are equal. But a lot of work still needs to be done, as even today the discrimination is prevalent among the society. There is need to eradicate any discrimination based on caste, religion, sex or creed. These should not be there. We need to educate every citizen, about his fundamental right.

POINTS TO REMEMBER

1. Fundamental rights are those rights which develop the physical, mental, moral and cultural abilities of humans.
2. Constitution of India has provided six fundamental rights.
3. Rights and duties are two faces of same coin.
4. To get some rights we have to abide by some rules.
5. Citizens should not misuse their rights.
6. According to constitution every kind of discrimination have been abolished.
7. All are equal before constitution.
8. India has adopted fundamental right from the constitution of America.

Exercises

(A) Fill in the Blanks :

1. Fundamental Rights has been included in the Constitution of India.
2. The Fundamental Rights are included in Article of the Constitution of India.
3. Article 25 of Constitution prohibits
4. The first fundamental right is
5. Freedom of Press has been given under

(B) Put a tick against the Right (✓) and a cross against the wrong (×) :

1. We all are equal before the constitution.
2. There is no relation between Right and the Duty.
3. Judiciary is the defender of the fundamental rights.
4. Right to Education is a Fundamental Right.
5. Admission can be denied in a government institution on the basis of Religion, Caste and Colour.

(C) Multiple Choice Questions :

1. **From which class is the right to free and compulsory Education implemented.**
(A) Fifth (B) Eighth
(C) Tenth (D) Eleventh
2. **Under which right to the selling of man prohibited.**
(A) Right to provision of Constitution
(B) Right to Equality
(C) Right against Exploitation
(D) None of the above
3. **Since when is the Right to Education has been implemented in India.**
(A) August 4, 2009 (B) December, 2002
(C) 1st April, 2010 (D) 1st April 2009

4. **Under which Article of the Constitution does the Right to Education fall.**

(A) Article 21

(B) Article 21-A

(C) Article 20

(D) None of the above

(D) Answer the following questions in not more than 15 words :

1. What is meant by Rights ?
2. Write the meaning of Primary Right.
3. Write two duties connected with any two rights.
4. What is meant by the Right to the Provision of the Constitution ?
5. By which rule has the Untouchability been done away with.

(E) Answer the following questions in 50-60 words :

1. Write a short note on the Right to Education.
2. What fundamental rights are included in the constitution ?
3. 'Right ana Duties are two sides of same coin'. How?
4. Explain the Right against Exploitation.
5. How can be defend the Fundamental Right ?



Chapter 25 PARLIAMENT - STRUCTURE ROLE AND IMPORTANCE

The democratic system has been set up in accordance with the spirit of Indian Constitution. As India is a vast country, indirect democracy system was established. Such a democratic system is being run by the elected representatives who are responsible to the people of the country.

Meaning

The word Parliament is derived from the French word (parler), which means “to have conversation.” This, parliament is a place where people come together to converse and discuss the national and international issues.

Parliament is that system of governance in which both the executive and the legislative organs of government work in close relationship. All members of the executive body are elected from the members of the Legislative Assembly and they remain in office till they enjoy the support of the Legislative Assembly. All the members of the executive are accountable to the legislature for the working and policies.

COMPOSITION : Parliament consists of two houses : Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha.

LOK SABHA : As the words indicate it is the “House of the People”. Lok Sabha is composed of the directly elected representatives of the people. The maximum strength



The Parliament House

of the house envisaged by the constitution is 545. Out of these, 543 members are direct representatives of the people while 2 members are nominated by the President. Provisions for reservation of the schedule castes and schedule tribes have been made (85 Seats for Schedule Castes and 47 Seats for Schedule Tribes) Punjab state sends 13 members to Lok Sabha. This house may be dissolved by the president under certain rules. If dissolved the house can be constituted again through elections only.

RAJYA SABHA : This is a permanent house of the Parliament. The total strength of this house is 250. Out of these, 238 members are from the States and Union Territories, while 12 members are selected by the President from those persons who have secured popularity in the field of Literature, Social Service, Science and Art. The members of the Rajya Sabha are indirectly elected by members of the legislative bodies of the states. Each member has a term of 2 years and new members are elected in their place. Seven members are elected from Punjab by proportional representation.

Features :

1. Difference between nominated and real executive.
2. Close relation between the Executive and Legislative.
3. The responsibility of executive towards legislative assembly.
4. Under the leadership of the Prime Minister.
5. Indefinite term of the Executive.
6. Legal recognition to the Opposition party.
7. Collective and individual responsibility.

REASONS FOR ADOPTING A DEMOCRATIC GOVERNMENT IN INDIA

On the basis of the relationship between the Legislative and Executive, two types of government can be established. (1) Parliamentary (2) Presidential. Now the question arises that as to why do our Constitutional members selected Parliamentary government. Following are the reasons.

- 1. Knowledge of Indian masses about Parliamentary Government :** Before independence the parliamentary government was introduced through in Acts of 1861, 1892, 1919, 1935. This is also considered to be superior form of government.
- 2. Support from members of the Constitutional Committee :** This form of government was the first choice of the committee. The President of the committee, Dr. B.R. Ambedkar said that this system consists both the qualities of accountability as well as permanance.

3. This system is based on Responsibility : India has been under slavery for centuries, thus such a system was required that could be based on responsibility and accountability, hence Parliamentary Government was introduced.

4. This system is adaptable to change : People of India wanted the Government which was adaptable to change as and when required. Hence in such a system the government can be changed whenever desired.

5. A Democratic Government to the core : Parliamentary Government reinforces the spirit of democratic government. It is run by elected representatives of the people who can influence the government policies, by asking questions and criticising their policies.

Thus, from the above mentioned facts we can easily conclude that Parliamentary System of government is the best for our country.

India has adopted the Parliamentary form of Government
from the Constitution of England.

ROLE OF THE PARLIAMENT IN LAW MAKING

Three main organs of any government are ; Legislature, Executive and Judiciary. The main responsibility of making laws lies with the Parliament. The bills can be introduced in either of the houses of Parliament for making a law after the approval of both the houses it is then sent to the President for his approval. The President can call a joint session of both the houses before converting the bill into a law. The bill has to pass through many stages before it becomes a law. Thus Parliament is the only highest body to frame laws. These laws are supreme. Indian constitution framers also considered this principle the best :



The Rashtrapati Bhawan

ACCOUNTABILITY OF GOVERNMENT TOWARDS PARLIAMENT

In our constitution, the executive has been truly made accountable to the Parliament. The government can exist only till the time it enjoys the majority in the legislative assembly. All members of the executive (govt.) are truly answerable to the Parliament for all their policies and actions. If the members of the executive lose the majority, they have to resign.

The Parliament controls the government in the following ways :

1. Asking questions from ministers
2. Debate
3. Voting
4. No majority bill etc.

ROLE OF PRESIDENT, PRIME MINISTER AND THE CABINET OF MINISTERS

The parliamentary government has two types executives, Nominal Executive, and real Executive. President is constitutional head of country. To seek election to the high office of the President of India, a candidate should possess the following qualification :

- (1) He should be a citizen of India.
- (2) He should be minimum 35 years of age at the time of election.
- (3) He should not be an insolvent or bankrupt.
- (4) He should not hold any office of profit under the central or state government.
- (5) He should not be a pronounced offender.

The President of India is elected indirectly by an electoral college which consists of elected members of legislative assemblies and elected members. The president of India normally elected for five years. Smt. Pratibha Patil is first woman President of India.

The President of India is the constitutional head of the country. The President has executive, judicial and legislative powers, but he can not exercise these powers at his/her will. Actually these powers are used on the advice of Prime Minister and his Council of Ministers. Although President of India is the constitutional head, but in the past we have seen that the President has played an important role since the trend of coalition government has started. In the years 1998, 1999 and 2004 the President was entrusted to make crucial decisions in election process. Now a days President is no more like a Rubber stamp but he plays an active role as President.

POWERS OF PRIME MINISTER

The Prime Minister of India is the most powerful person in government of India. He is a pivot of the entire administration. The actual use of powers lies with the Prime Minister. Dr. B.R. Ambedkar has compared the powers of the Indian Prime Minister with those of the President of USA. All policies and plans are made in consultation with the Prime Minister. The Prime Minister selects the members of Council of Ministers. But ever since the "Hung House" came into picture, the identity of Prime Minister has taken a hit. In 1996, the Prime Minister, Mr. A.B. Vajpayee had to resign with 2 weeks of being elected as Prime Minister. In recent political



President Smt. Droupadi Murmu

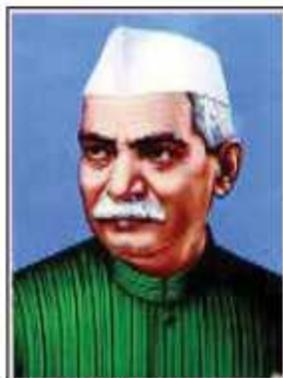


Prime Minister Sh. Narendra Modi

history, from 1989 to 2009 no political party has got clear cut majority in the election of House of people. As a result parliamentary system in India fool a turn and the position of Prime Minister weakened. After 1989 coalition Governments have been coming into existence. In the 14th and 15th Lok Sabha elections Congress succeeded to form Government with the help of its alliances. The name given to this alliance is UPA (United Progressive Alliance). But during the 16th Lok Sabha elections, B.J.P. was the only party which attained majority and strengthened the Parliamentary System in India.

VIEWS OF PANDIT NEHRU AND Dr. RAJENDRA PRASAD ON PRESIDENT OF INDIA :

Dr. Rajendra Prasad was the first President where as Pandit Nehru was the first Prime Minister of independent India. Both the leaders were very influential. Dr. Rajendra Prasad was in favour of giving more powers to the President. He wanted to make the centre to be as strong as possible. Pandit Nehru also wanted the center to be strong but he wanted to lay more powers with the Prime Minister and his Council of Ministers to see India as a strong country. Both the leaders worked for many terms each in their respective roles.



Dr. Rajinder Prasad

POSITION OF PARLIAMENT

Parliament of India is the highest institution of the country to make laws of the country. Undoubtedly, it has been very strong institution in the times of Pandit Nehru, Lal Bahadur Shastri and Indira Gandhi. But of late we have



Pt. Jawahar Lal Nehru

seen that the reputation of Indian Parliament is declining day-by-day. There was time when up to 10 laws are passed in a single day creating doubts on the integrity of the speakers. Absence of members, downfall in the committee system, rivalry amongst members are a few reasons more for this decline. No debates on important national and international issues are held. What to talk about making of laws about them.

Hung Parliament : When single political party does not get absolute majority in the Lok Sabha elections, then Hung Parliament comes into existence. This form of Government formed in such situation is mostly called Minority Government. The practice of Hung Parliament is dangerous for our Parliamentary system of Government because it gives birth to political instability and politics of opportunism.

Thus, we need to reinforce the same spirit in our parliamentary system. But this increasing number of political parties is an alarming bell. The role of local parties have been increasing as compared to the national parties. If we still don't improve, then we will not be able to get good governance in future.

POINTS TO REMEMBER

1. Parliament is that institution where people discuss national and international matters.
2. The Parliament has two houses. Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha.
3. The Lok Sabha is an elected body.
4. The Rajya Sabha is a permanent house where member are elected through indirect method and its 1/3 members retire after every two year.
5. In India we have parliamentary form of government.
6. According to Dr. B.R. Ambedkar the parliamentary govt. is responsible and permanent govt.
7. Actually parliamentary govt. establishes democracy.
8. The govt. has three organs-Legislature, Executive and Judiciary.
9. Bill has to undergo many stages before becoming a law.
10. The President is the constitutional head in India.
11. The Prime Minister is the centre point of the administration of the country.
12. The first (EVM) Electronic Voting Machines were used in General Lok Sabha Elections of 2004.

Exercises

(A) Fill in the Blanks :

1. The total number of members in the Lok Sabha is
2. The total number of members in the Rajya Sabha is
3. members are elected for the Lok Sabha from Punjab.
4. years of age is necessary to become the President of India.
5. Parliamentary form of government is also known as government.
6. The Finance Bill can only be presented in the

(B) Put a tick against the Right (✓) and a cross against the wrong (×) :

1. Lok Sabha is a permanent House.
2. 1/3rd of the members of the Rajya Sabha retire every two years.
3. There is a deep relationship between the Executive and the Judiciary in Parliamentary form of government.
4. Prime Minister is national Head in a Parliamentary form of government.
5. The laws enacted by the Parliament are the Supreme.

(C) Multiple Choice Questions :

1. **How many members can be nominated for the Rajya Sabha by the President ?**
(A) 8 (B) 12
(C) 02 (D) 10
2. **How many members are elected for the Rajya Sabha from the Punjab ?**
(A) 11 (B) 13
(C) 07 (D) 02
3. **Who resolves the differences between both the Houses of Parliament ?**
(A) Speaker (B) Prime Minister
(C) President (D) Vice President

(D) Answer the following questions in not more than 15 words :

1. Write the literal meaning of the word Parliament.
2. How is the government answerable to the Parliament ?
3. How is a law formed in the Parliament ?
4. How is the government formed after the Lok Sabha elections ?
5. Write the main features of the Parliamentary government.

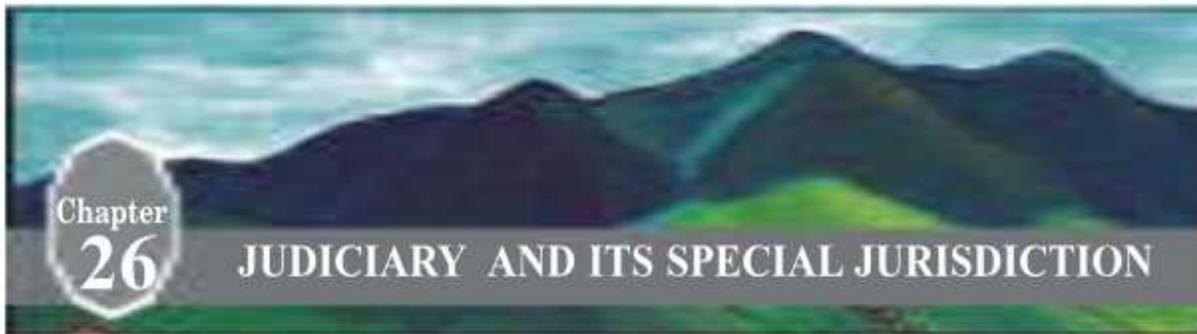
(E) Answer the following questions in 50-60 words :

1. Discuss the role of the President and the Prime Minister in a Parliamentary form of government.
2. Write the responsible factors for the fall of the position of Parliament.
3. Give necessary suggestions for the Improvement of the position of Parliament.
4. Write the composition of Indian Parliament.

Activity

1. The students and teachers are to discuss short comings of Indian Parliamentary system in the class.
2. View television news to watch proceedings in Parliament closely and then discuss it with your teachers and class-mates.





The government has three main pillars i.e. legislative, executive and judiciary. The legislative makes the laws while executive implements the laws and the judiciary is responsible for the justice. Judiciary has a special significance in a democratic government since it has been termed as the protector of our constitution. The role of judiciary has become even more critical as it has to mediate and resolve conflicts between the states and centre government and also ensure proper implementation of laws. The success of government can be measured by the success of judiciary.

India has established such a judicial system. The highest court of justice has been established in New Delhi and is called the Supreme Court. All the states have their own high courts. District level have session courts and SDM's are present at the tehsil level. To ensure justice to the grass root level, panchayats and municipal corporations have also been formed. This is all in a hierarchical structure.

To move a Case from lower court to higher court

Arrangement has been made in the constitution to provide justice to the citizens. If for any reason one feels that justice has been denied to him, he is free to approach the nearest court of law. Decision of district courts can be challenged in high courts. Similarly decision of high courts can be challenged at supreme courts.

High courts of all states are bound to obey the judgement given by the Supreme Court. Similarly district courts are bound to obey the laws of High courts. The judiciary has been unbiased and independent. There is no control of any government or political party in any judgement made by the judiciary. The judges are appointed by the president. The judges of Supreme Court and high court retire at the age of 62 to 65 respectively. The judges are paid handsome salaries.

Appellate Jurisdiction :

The courts of our country have been entrusted with numerous powers. One such power is the appellate jurisdiction.

Constitutional appeal :

According to this appeal, if the high court of any state furnishes a written

statement that the particular case has to be studied in constitutional detail, then the same can be challenged in the supreme court. Even if the high court does not give the certified letter, still the Supreme Court can take up the case.

Civil appeal :

Any cases judged by the high court can be challenged in the supreme court, but in cases the high court needs to testify that the case has a strong legal ground. In some cases, the Supreme Court can take up an appeal without the authorization of high court.

Criminal appeal :

Any case in the lower court where the accused have been released or accused has been sentenced to death or the case has been directly summoned by the high court

from the accused to death or the high court certifies that the case has strong legal ground, the supreme court can take up the case. Apart from this, under section 136, Supreme court has special powers to take up appeals against the judgement passed by the lower courts. According to the special court act, any decision given by special court can only be challenged in the Supreme Court. This appeal has to be presented within 30 days from the date of judgement.



Supreme Court

Similarly high court has also right to take up appeals against the judgement passed by the lower courts.

Difference between civil and criminal cases

Any case can be broadly classified into two categories.

Civil Cases

These are cases related to common people. In these cases the issue related to fundamental rights, marriage, divorce, rape, property, land disputes etc, are covered. These are cases related to personal life or personal relationship.

Criminal Cases

These cases are related to fights disputes and criminal activities. If there is

a physical injury, damage to any part of the body, such cases are considered as criminal cases. For example, if somebody forcefully acquires land then it is a civil case, but if this acquisition leads to a fight and physical injuries then it becomes a criminal case as well : Attempt to murder is also a criminal offence. Criminal cases are filed under article 134 and can lead to capital punishment. It can be a death sentence, but the charge should be convicted. All the criminal cases are fought at government level but not on personal level.

Role of government prosecutor As it is clear from the name, government prosecutor is a lawyer who fights the case on behalf of the government. There are different government lawyers for the different disputes. Disputes between government and its employees, criminal cases, civil cases etc. all have different government lawyers who fight for the government and they have to protect the government interest. The government lawyers are appointed by Government. They have to clear the state judicial services examination which are held by the state government time to time.

Public Interest Litigation

In our country we have the provision of filing cases of public interest. In this case any person can put forward a case involving public interest in front of the court. The person doing so may not even be related to the case directly. PIL is not against any individual but is targeted against any department or the government officials or organization - No issues of personal interest can be filed through PIL. These cases are prosecuted by the Government Lawyer.

Power of Judicial Review

Judiciary in India has the power to review the ordinance issued by executive or an act passed by Parliament or any state legislative Assembly. If an ordinance or an act is against the basic structure of our constitution, the judiciary can declare such an ordinance or an act unconstitutional.

Using this power of Judicial Review our judiciary has become the guardian of our constitution.

Independence and impartiality of Judiciary : Our Judiciary is absolutely independent from the other two organs of government such as legislature and executive. Only the independent and impartial Judiciary can protect the rights and liberties of people. Maintaining the Supremacy of our constitution, it ensures the people's belief in administration.

Lok Adalat (Public Courts)

For the purpose of giving speedy and Cheap Justice Lok Adalats are organised under the law of legal organisation. In addition to criminal cases any case which is

pending in the Judicial Court that can be brought in the Lok Adalats. Now the popularity of Lok Adalats is increasing day by day because the Lok Adalats try to decide the matters by compromising between the both parties. All are bound to the decision given by the Lok Adalats It is mentioned here that no appeal can be filed against the Lok Adalat's decision.

Directions of court in registering FIR

FIR, means first information report. We are supposed to inform the police immediately in the event of any mishappening. It has to be informed to be nearest police post. It is not worthy to mention here that no police official or in charge can refuse to register an FIR, if any police official refuses to register an FIR, the matter can be brought to the notice of SHO if SHO does not report the matter the DSP can be approached. If the DSP does not register then we can approach SP. If SP does not register, the SSP can be approached.

In any unlikely event, if the police do not register the FIR, then we can approach the judiciary in this regard. It is mentioned in our constitution that any court can direct the police to register an FIR. The court itself can also register the FIR and hand it over to the police for investigation. Although, it is highly unlikely that the police will refuse to register the FIR. But if it happen like this, then there are special right to judiciary.

POINTS TO REMEMBER

1. The govt. has three main organs - I. Legislature - to make law. II. Executive- to implement law. III Judiciary - to give justice.
2. The highest court of law is Supreme Court in Delhi.
3. To give justice to citizens every possible laws have been made by constitution.
4. High courts have to abide the decision of the supreme court.
5. Cases are of two types - Civil asnd Criminal.
6. Criminal cases are fought by govt not on personal levels.
7. Govt. Lawyer fight for the benefit of Govt.
8. F.I.R. is called First information Report.
9. The judges of Supreme Court can stay on his post upto the age of 65 years.
10. The judges of high court can stay on this post upto the age of 62 years.

Exercises

(A) Fill in the Blanks :

1. is called the F.I.R.
2. is the highest court of India.
3. The main organs of the government are
4. The Supreme Court Judges remains in office upto the age of years,
5. PIL means
6. Criminal Cases are registered under Article

(B) Put a tick against the Right (✓) and a cross against the wrong (×) :

1. Judiciary is called the defender of the constitution.
2. Dual judiciary System is in practice in India.
3. An appeal cannot be made in High Court against the District court decisions.
4. The Prime Minister appoint the Judges.
5. Criminal Cases are related to quarrels regarding land and property.

(C) Multiple Choice Questions :

1. **Under which has the Supreme Court been provided special powers.**
(A) Article 134 (B) Article 135
(C) Article 136 (D) Article 157
2. **How are the High Court formed ?**
(A) District Level (B) Tehsil Level
(C) State Level (D) Village Level
3. **How can the Public Interest cases be filed ?**
(A) For defending Self Interest.
(B) For defending Government Interest
(C) For defending Public Interest
(D) None of the Above

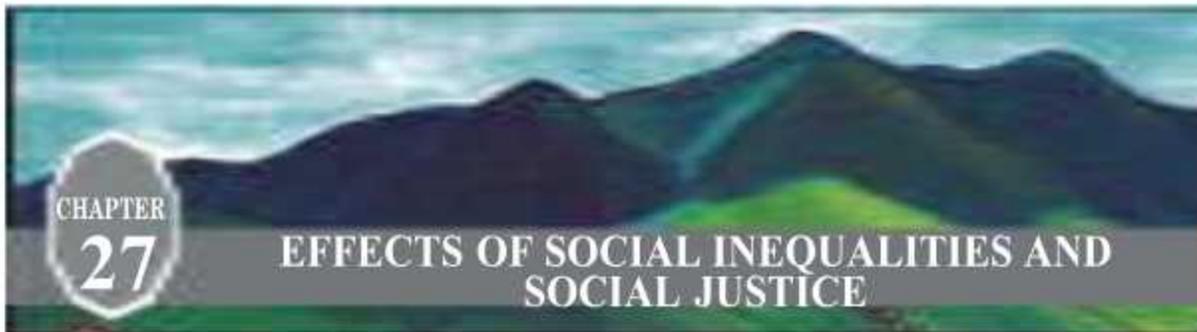
(D) Answer the following questions in not more than 15 words :

1. What is Judiciary ?
2. Which is the highest court of India and where it is located ?
3. Which are the main cases ?
4. What are Civil case ?
5. Who are Legal Advisor ?
6. What is PIL (Public Interest Litigation) ?
7. What is FIR ?

(E) Answer the following questions in 50-60 words :

1. Explain the Importance of Judiciary.
2. Write the special powers of the Judiciary of India.
3. Write about the Jidicary System of India.
4. What are criminal cases ? What is difference between Civil and Criminal Cases ?
5. Where can FIR be registered ? Explain the role of Judiciary in the event of the FIR not being registered.





Indian Constitution is based on various principles. Some of the basic principles are Equality, Freedom and Secularism. It is clearly written in the constitution that “We the people of India having solemnly resolved to constitute India into sovereign, Socialist and Secular Democratic Republic.” But even after 66 years of independence do we have social and financial equality in our country ? Indian democracy has not been able to achieve the desired results, as compared to the democracies of western and European countries. There are many social differences which are influencing our democracy. Before discussing the social inequalities, we will understand about the marginalised group.

Marginalised group : Marginalised groups are those groups of the society which remained ignored in the past. The chief among these are the Scheduled castes, the Scheduled tribes, Backward classes and Minorities.

- 1. Scheduled Casts :** The constitution of India does not define the scheduled castes. The castes which formerly treated as untouchable in society are called scheduled castes. According to 2011 census, 15% of the total population comes to these castes.
- 2. Scheduled Tribes :** As is the case with schedule castes, the constitution of India does not define the scheduled Tribes as well. In simple words, we can say that castes, which were socially discarded and were economically backward, mostly residing in tribal areas, are known as scheduled tribes. According to 2011 census, 7.5% of total population constitutes these tribes.
- 3. Backward Classes :** Like wise the term Backward classes, has not been defined in the constitution of India. In general terms, we can say that weaker sections of the society, other than the scheduled castes and scheduled tribes are known as Backward class. The Mandal Commission had considered them as 41% of the total population of the country.
- 4. Minorities :** Minorities, whether religious, or lingual are those who have less number of people of their own sect and religion. According to the 2011 census, these minorities constitutes the 18.42% of the total population.

Right to Equality

1. The teacher discusses the importance of The Right of Equality provided by the Constitution of India as one of the fundamental rights.

The Right to Equality (Articles 14 – 18) provides for the equal treatment of everyone before the law, prevents unjust treatment on various grounds, treats everybody as equals in matters of public employment, and abolishes untouchability and titles (such as Sir, Khan Bahadur, Rai Bahadur, etc.).

No citizen on grounds of race, religion, caste, place of birth or sex can be subjected to any disadvantage, restriction or condition. Everyone has free access to public places like tanks, wells, ghats, etc. that are maintained by the State or that are meant for the general public. Special provisions can be made for women, children and the backward classes like quota for college admissions or jobs etc.

In order to defend ourselves and others from any form of discrimination, we need to know the provisions in the constitutions, especially the Right of Equality (Articles 14 – 18).

The students can observe their schools, families and communities closely to ensure that everyone is treated equally and not as being inferior. They can discuss ways to practise equality in homes, classrooms and schools.

Table : Studying the status of Right to Equality around us

Article	What does it mean for Indian citizens?	How can the students and teachers ensure that Right to Equality is practised in school?
Article 14	Every person is equal before the law and can get equal protection of the laws within the territory of India irrespective of religion, race, cast, sex or place of birth.	Zero-bullying rules apply to everyone. Classroom duties should be meant for everyone.
Article 15	No citizens can be unjustly treated on grounds of religion, race, caste, sex, place of birth or any of these.	
Article 16	Equal opportunity for all citizens in matters relating to employment or appointment to any office under the State.	
Article 17	No untouchability	
Article 18	End all titles.	

TYPES OF SOCIAL INEQUALITIES :

1. Communalism : This is the first social difference. India is a land of many religions. Due to orthodox thinking of people, communalism has become a part of our social and political lifestyle. This fanatic stand for religion led to the partition of our country in 1947. In 1984 the Sikhs and in 1998-99 the Christian missionaries faced the burnt of communalism. This evil is also present in our Indian politics. Politicians increase their vote banks on the basis of religion. The religious sentiments of people are incited and people are asked to cast votes in the name of religion.

Article 25-28 of the Indian constitution provide us with religious freedom. All religions have been considered equal. All have been given equal right to adopt, practice and preach any religion of their choice.

Effects of Communalism.

- (a) Groupism of political parties based on religion.
- (b) Many organizations based on religion are influencing the Indian democracy.
- (c) Communalism is the main force behind the growing incidents of violence in our society.
- (d) Influence of religion in forming council of ministers.
- (e) Communalism influence voting mandate of people to a large extent.

2. Racism

Racism is also another kind of social inequality. Our society has been divided into many groups based on caste or race. India has close to 3000 castes in its society. Many political parties fight elections based on caste or race. People are incited on racial grounds and votes are also demanded accordingly. Many castes are still treated with inequality in India. Even today in the interiors of India, some castes do not have access to wells, temples etc.

Indian government has taken some steps to stop this social evil. There is a ban on the discrimination on the basis of castes. All have been considered equal. This is included in article 14-18 of our constitution.

Effects of Racism

- (a) Political parties are being created on the basis of religion.
- (b) Vote banks are being created in the name of castes.
- (c) Reservations based on caste has further created a gap amongst the castes.
- (d) Untouchability is still prevalent.
- (e) Violence and riots are caused.
- (f) Emerging of organizations based on castes.

3. Untouchability

This is also one social evil prevalent since ages in our society. As a result of social evil, a large section of Indian society has been exploited. According to this evil ; it is considered a sin to touch the people of certain castes.

The Indian democracy has incorporated special provisions to eradicate this social evil from the society. Untouchability is prohibited by law under the Article 17 of our constitution. An act was passed against untouchability in 1955.

Effects of Untouchability

- (a) Untouchability gives birth to social differences.
- (b) Untouchability creates guilty consciousness.
- (c) People avoid active participation in politics.
- (d) Untouchability gives birth to violence.

4. Illiteracy

According to a recent survey India has 25.96% illiterate people. Illiteracy is the root cause of all social evils. It is due to illiteracy that social evils like orthodoxy, superstitions, caste discrimination, racism, etc. are prevalent in our society. An illiterate person can never become a good citizen. Some greedy politicians always misguide illiterate people.

Our government has made efforts at all levels to stop the menace of illiteracy. Many missions have been started in this regard. Government has made education compulsory and free up to class 8th for every citizen. The number of educational institutes has also been increased. Right to education has been incorporated as one of our fundamental rights.

Results of Literacy

- (a) Illiteracy is the root causes of all social evils.
- (b) It is a hindrance in success of democracy.
- (c) It is a blockage in upliftment of people.
- (d) Illiterate people can easily be misguided.
- (e) Illiterate people cannot use their fundamental rights properly.
- (f) Illiterate is a disgrace on our society.

5. Language-Discrimination

India is a land of many languages. People get discriminated on basis of language also. Indian constitution has enlisted 22 languages as national language. Hindi has been chosen as the National Language and link language as well. The states have been created on the basis of languages. In many parts of our country, people are still

demanding separate identity on the basis of their languages. People give more importance to their languages and cultures, over the national issues. Our constitution has given equal importance to all the 22 languages while Hindi has been link language among these national languages as it is spoken and taught in many states of India.

Results of Languages Discrimination

- (a) There is a considerable increase in demands for separate political identity based on language.
- (b) Political parties are created on the basis of language.
- (c) Resentment based on languages are increasing.
- (d) Discrimination and violence based on language.
- (e) It also influences electoral mandate.

Reservation

A provision of “reservation” has been made in the Indian constitution for the people of schedule caste and schedule tribes, who have been down treated by our society since ages. This was made for upliftment of those castes that have been facing social boycott since ages and have been exploited. Such people are known as “dalits.” The “dalit” is taken from Hebrew word “dal” which means ‘something crushed under the feet.’ These days they are called backward classes.

According to the section 330 and 332 of our constitution, a provision has been made to reserve seats in Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha for schedule caste/schedule tribe/backward classes candidates so that they can be adequately represented. Initially this provision was made only for ten years but this tenure was enhanced time to time by passing the constitutional amendments. Thus according to amendments - 73 and 74, all villages panchayats and municipal bodies will also have representation of the schedule caste, schedule tribe backward classes. According to Mandal Commission, in 1978 it was suggested that the seats of reservation to be based upon population. This report has still not been implemented.

Mandal Commission recommended 22.5% in Government Jobs for the Scheduled Casts and Scheduled Tribes. It recommended 27% reservation in government Jobs for backward classes. This recommendation has been implemented.

Reservation of seats in Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha for women are being demanded time to time. A bill is under consideration in parliament to give 33% reservation to women in House of People. House of State and State legislative assembly. Till today the politics of caste is influencing the politics of our country. According to J.P. Narayan “caste is the most important political party in India.”

There was one more social evil in our society that is the “dalits” used to carry defecate’s the toilet waste on their heads to throw them out. People doing this job were considered untouchables and were often humiliated. The government of India took adequate steps and stopped this practice and also made it punishable under the law. Now this practice is not required due to the improved system of sanitation in our life styles.

POINTS TO REMEMBER

1. Social inequality is influencing the successes of democratic form of governments.
2. India was divided into two parts in 1947 i.e. Pakistan and India due to communal inequality.
3. The right to equality is given from areticle 14 to 18 in our constitution.
4. Untouchability is inhuman activity.
5. The govt. is trying to irradiate the problem of illietracy through Sarv Sikhya Abhiyan.
6. Democratic govt. needs to be the govt. of the educated people.
7. 22 languages have been recognised by Constitution of India.
8. Hindi language has been regarded as our national language among other languages. It is link language for the people of north and central India.
9. Mandal Commission has recommended 3743 schedule castes and tribal communities.
10. Seats are reserved for womens, scheduled castes, tribes and backward classes in rural and urban local government institutions.



(A) Fill in the Blanks :

1. Social, Political and Economic Justice is promised in
2. Freedom has been given from Article to of the Constitution of India.
3. There are more than castes in India.
4. The were massacred in Delhi in 1984.
5. languages are recongised by the Constitution of India.

6. The Mandal Commission was setup in
7. The Mandal Commission has identified Schedule Caste and Schedule Tribes.

(B) Put a tick against the Right (✓) and a cross against the wrong (×) :

1. The social inequalities do not affect the government.
2. 54% of the Indian population is illiterate today.
3. Hindi is the only National language of the India.
4. Seats are reserved for Schedule Caste and Schedule Tribes even today.
5. The 73 and 74 Amendment of the Constitution govern the Local Self Government in the Villages and the cities.
6. Social Inequalities are coming to an end in the Indian Society.

(C) Multiple Choice Questions :

1. **Who said, Caste is the most important political party in India.**
(A) Mahatma Gandhi (B) Pandit Jawahar Lal Nehru
(C) Shri Jai Parkash Narain (D) Dr. B.R. Ambedkar
2. **Which Fundamental Right has been added to the constitution of India to ensure Social Justice to the Indian people.**
(A) Rights to Liberty (B) Right against Exploitation
(C) Rights to Equality (D) None of the Above
4. **For whom is reservation of seats permissible in government jobs ?**
(A) Schedule Caste and Schedule Tribes
(B) Only for Backward Classes
(C) Schedule Caste, Schedule Tribes and Backward classes.
(D) Only for poor people.

(D) Answer the following questions in not more than 15 words :

1. What do you mean by Social inequalities ?
2. What is meant by casteism and untouchability ?
3. What is meant by Linguism ?
4. What is meant by Reservation ?
5. Has Scavaging been discontinued ?
6. How does illiteracy affect Democracy ?

(E) Answer the following in 50-60 words :

1. Explain results of communal inequality.
2. Write a note on Sarv Sikheya Abhiyaan.
3. What is a marginalised group ? Write its types too.
4. What is the effect of casteism on democracy of India ?
5. What is reservation and why is it needed ?

Activity :

1. Discuss untouchability, communalism and illitracy with your classmates. Make suggestions to do away with these ills.





What is a bank ?

A bank is an institution that accepts deposits and give loans in return for an interest. Can you name a few banks that operate in India ?

Deposit

When a bank accepts money from the public, it is called a deposit. Since the person is deposing his money, the bank gives him some benefits in the form of interest.

Loans

When a bank gives money to the public for various purposes like building a house, buying a car or setting up a business, it is called a loan. The bank charges interest on the loans.

Credit Card

A card issued by a financial institution, usually banks, giving the holder an option to buy goods and services without making any actual cash payment. This is a type of short-term borrowing. It works on the cardholder's promise to pay at a later date, varying from 30 to 50 days. If the holder fails to pay within the stipulated time period, the issuer of the card charges an interest.

Debit card

An electronic card issued by a bank that allows the holder access to his account to withdraw cash or pay for goods and services. This removes the need for the holder to go to the bank branch as they can now just go to an ATM or pay electronically at merchant locations. This type of card, as a form of payment, also removes the need for cheques, because the debit card immediately transfers money from the client's account to the merchant's account.

Automated Teller Machine

ATMs are electronic machines that are operated by a customer for availing of various banking services such as cash withdrawals, checking account balance, bill

payments, transfer of funds, etc. ATMs provide service round the clock. The customer can withdraw cash upto a certain a limit during any time of the day or night. To use an ATM, the customer has to obtain an ATM card from his bank. The ATM card is a plastic card that, is magnetically coded and contains a unique card number and some security information such as the expiration date. It can be asily read by the machine.

To operate an ATM, the customer has to insert the card inthe machine and then enter the Personal Identificaiton Number or PIN. If the authentication or PIN is correct, the ATM permits a customer to make transactions.

Cheque

Cheques are simply an instruction from an account holder of his/her bank directing it to pay a certain sum of money to a specific person or to the bearer of the instrument. An account holder should ensure that a cheque is issued only when there are sufficient funds in the account. On receiving a cheque, the beneficiary deposits it in his bank, which will collect the money through a clearing house. Clearing house is a system in which banks in a city exchange cheques with one another and settle the payments by arriving at a net amount of payables and receivables. After the cheque is exchanged, the account of the issuer of the cheque is debited and the credit is passed on to the beneficiary. Cheques drawn on any bank in the country can be cleared through various mechanisms available in the clearing system. The process usually takes 1-3days depending on the local clearing house procedures.

Case study: ATM and its benefits

Mr. Sharma works with an MNC. Being busy, he is not able to devote time at home. His wife looks after all the household activities. One day, while Mr. Sharma was out of town on an official tour, his mother fell ill and was advised hospitalisation. Mrs. Sharma took her mother-in-law to the hospital. It was late at night and she was worried that she had very little money with her. Suddenly she spotted an ATM booth near the hospital. She immediately took out her ATM card and used it to withdraw money. In this way she was able to arrange money for the treatemnt. After two days Mr. Sharma was back from his tour. His wife told him the whole incident. He was thankful that the bank had provided ATM cards to people so as to help them withdraw money at any time without using cheques.

Let us check our knowledge about Banking activities :

*** Mrs. Sharma withdraw money with the help of :**

- | | |
|----------------|---------------------|
| a) an ATM card | b) a credit card |
| c) a cheque | d) a withdrawl form |

- * **If you want to withdraw money from an ATM; you can withdraw,**
 - a) Only in the day time b) Any time
 - c) Only on week days d) Only on holidays
- * **Where have you seen an ATM booth ?**
 - a) Inside the banks b) Outside banks
 - c) In shopping malls d) All of the above
- * **What is the full form of ATM ?**
 - a) Automated teller machine b) All time money
 - c) Any time money d) Advance time machine
- * **What are the benefits of having an ATM card ?**
 - a) You can save time and it involves less paper work
 - b) You can withdraw money at any time
 - c) Checking your account balance is easy
 - d) All of the above



- 1) What are the things a customer can do with an ATM card ?
- 2) How can a credit card company charge interest to the holder ?
- 3) The bank pays an interest on _____ (deposits or loans).
- 4) What are the benefits of a debit card ?

Fill in the blanks :

- 1) A bank is an institution that accepts _____ and gives _____ in return for an interest.
- 2) When a person is depositing his money, the bank gives him some benefits in the form of _____.
- 3) When a bank gives money to the public for various purposes like building a house or buying car, it is called a _____.
- 4) A credit card is a form of _____.
- 5) If the credit card holder fails to pay within the stipulated time period, the issuer of the card charges _____.

- 6) When a bank issues an electronic card to a person so that he can have access to his account to withdraw cash or pay for goods and services, it is called a _____.
- 7) An _____ allows a customer to withdraw cash 24/7.
- 8) _____ is a system in which banks in acity exchange-cheques with one another and settle the payments.
- 9) Cheque processing usually takes place around _____ days depending upon the local clearing house procedures.
- 10) An account holder should ensure that a cheque is issued only when there are _____ funds in the account.

Jumbled Words	Clue	Solution
dsitope	Money deposited in abank	
cditer cdra	A small plastic card issued by a bank	
dtibe cdra	An electronic card issued by a bank that allows the holder to access his account to withdraw cash.	
Enicorteel cdra	For example, debit and credcit card	
Atedamotu llerte mchaeni	An electronic banking outlet	



